



خواجه



www.khawagah.blogspot.com

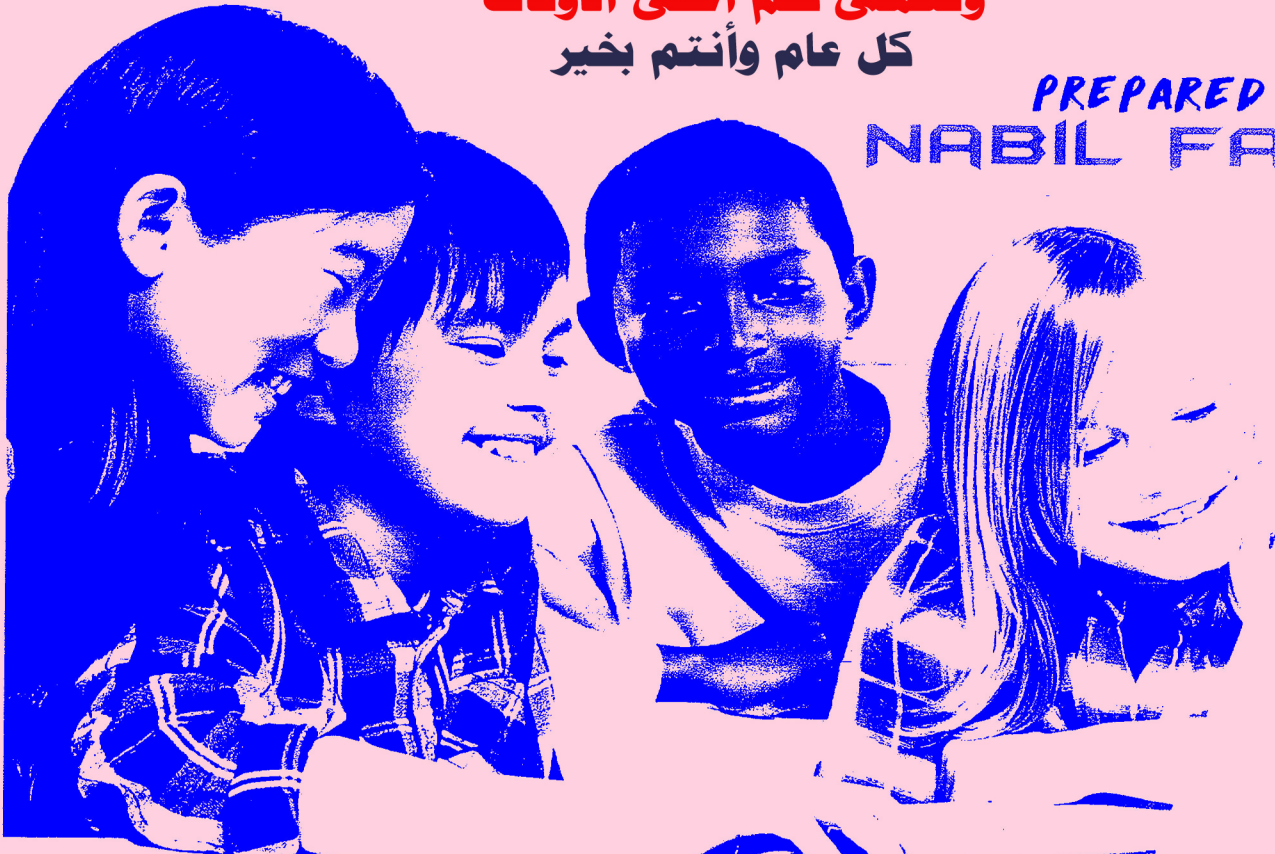


THE LIGHTS IN ENGLISH

01227244601

مدونة **خواجه**
ترحب بكم
وتتمنى لكم أحلى الأوقات
كل عام وأنتم بخير

PREPARED BY
NABIL FAWZY



KHAWAGAH





www.khawagah.blogspot.com



مدونة خواجه
ترحب بكم
وتتمنى لكم أحلى الأوقات
كل عام وأنتم بخير



UNIT ONE
WHERE WE LEARN

***- LESSONS (1-2)**

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Laboratory	معمل	Social studies	دراسات اجتماعية	Science	علوم
Library	مكتبة	Changing room	غرفة تغيير ملابس	History	تاريخ
toilet	حمام	Obligation	الزام	Maths	رياضيات
playground	فناء مدرسة	The river	النهر	Gym	قاعة رياضية
sports school	مدرسة رياضية	Each day	كل يوم	Gates	بوابات
rain	مطر	Country	دولة - قطر	Engineer	مهندس
stairs	سلم	Break	فسحة	Allow	يسمح
classroom	الفصل	Student	طالب - طالبة	Stay	يقيم - اقامه
Corridor	طرقه	Lunch	وجبة الغداء	Website	موقع على نت
Practise	يتدرب	Floor	أرضية	Music	موسيقى
Chemistry	كيمياء	Visit	يزور	Necessity	ضروره

***- Prepositions**

حروف الجر

Different from	مختلف عن	Good for	جيد لـ	Get sick	يصاب بالمرض
At school	في المدرسة	At the end	في نهاية	Have lunch	يتناول الغداء
From Egypt	من مصر	Do homework	يعمل الواجب	Do a walk	يتمشى
At break	في الفسحة	In the morning	في الصباح	Talk about	يتحدث عن
Do sport	يمارس الرياضة	Important for	مهم لـ	Want to +	المصدر
Do exercise	يحل تمرين	By bus	بواسطة الاتوبيس	Decide to +	المصدر
Good at	جيد في	At home	في المنزل	Agree to +	المصدر
Help + to + مفعول	مصدر + مفعول	Stop pollution	يمنع التلوث	Go into	يدخل
Help + to + مفعول	بدون مصدر + مفعول	Become polluted	يصبح ملوث	Talk about	يتحدث عن
On the first floor	في الطابق الاول	Write about	يكتب عن	Walk up	يصعد
On the ground floor	في الطابق الارضى	In different countries	في دول مختلفه	Talk to	يتحدث الى
Out the school gates	خارج بوابات المدرسه	Come home	يأتى البيت	At the end of	في نهاية
Walk along	يمشى للامام	At a sports school	في مدرسه رياضيه	Have +	ماده دراسيه
				Get ready	يستعد
				Go downstairs	ينزل للطابق السفلى

*** الكلمة وعكسها ***

WORD	OPPOSITE	WORD	OPPOSITE
Careful حريص	Careless مهمل	Top قمه	Bottom قاع
Upstairs الطابق العلوى	Down stairs الطابق السفلى	Different مختلف	The same نفس
After بعد	Before قبل	Walk up يصعد	Walk dpwn ينزل
Right يمين	Left شمال	Outside خارج	Inside داخل
Good at جيد في	Bad at سيىء في	Come يأتى	Go يذهب

***- LANGUAGE NOTES**

***- 1) GET READY FOR + V + ING OR NOUN**

EX:- We went to the changing room to get ready for P.E. .

EX:- We must get ready for going to the party .

***- 2) BY** بعدها وسائل المواصلات **On foot** مشيا على الاقدام

EX:- We travel to Aswan by bus .

EX:- We go to school on foot .

- *- 3) It's + صفه + TO + المصدر للتعبير عن شيء من المهم ان تفعله
 EX:- It's important to study hard to get high marks .
 EX:- It's dangerous to smoke .
- *- 4) IT's + صفه + not to + المصدر للتعبير عن شيء ليس من الضروري ألا تفعله
 EX:- It's important to study hard to get high marks .
 EX:- It's dangerous to smoke .
- *- 5) CLASS لهذه الكلمة معاني كثيرة هي (فصل - حصه - فتره دراسيه - صف دراسي)
 EX:- We ara in the same class at school . نحن في نفس الفصل .
 EX:-I am late for the chemistry class. أنا متأخر عن حصه الكيمياء .
 EX:-Ahmed is in class six. أحمد في الصف الدراسي السادس .

* كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح *

Stars نجوم	Stairs سلالم	Practise يتدرب	Practice تدريب
Websit موقع على نت	Site موقع جغرافى	Floor أرضيه	

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- After lunch, We can go downstairs to the ----- room to get ready for P.E.
 a. change b. changes c. changing d. changed
- We have our ----- lessons in the laboratory .
 a. history b. science c. geography d. maths
- How many lessons do you -----Each day.
 a. do b. make c. have d. speak
- The English classroom is on the first-----.
 a. flour b. floor c. flower d. flag
- I ----- karate for five hours every day.
 a. make b. play c. go d. practise
- The bus can't go ----- the play ground.
 a. Into b. on c. with d. under
- The laboratory is next ----- the library.
 a. on b. to c. with d. too
- You can go to your friend's house, but come home----- Seven o'clock.
 a. in b. on c. at d. to
- I go to the ----- every day to be fit and healthy.
 a. laboratory b. library c. gym d. gates
- Go along that ----- then turn right to go to the headmaster's office .
 a. Steps b. lab c. class d. corridor
- Ali is going to the ----- to put on his sports clothes .
 a. gym b. toilet c. classroom d. changing room
- The bus stops outside the school -----.
 a. gates b. stairs c. classroom d. ground



- 13- We played game of football in the -----.
a. playground b. office c. classroom d. gates
- 14- The headmaster's ----- Is at the end of the corridor.
a. class b. office c. desk d. lesson
- 15- She must be good at ----- because she looks fit.
a. cooking b. sports c. chemistry d. biology
- 16- At ----- I can eat my sandwiches and talk to my friends.
a. Upstairs b. breaks c. toilet d. downstairs
- 17- I----- karate twice a week.
a. make b. practise c. study d. get
- 18- We mustn't ----- during the lessens.
a. talk b. study c. practise d. have
- 19- The changing room is ----- So I walk up the stairs.
a. downstairs b. upstairs c. downtown d. up town
- 20- We bust be ----- in the laboratory.
a. bad b. rude c. careful d. careless
- 21- We go to the changing room to ----- ready for P.E...
a. do b. make c. have d. get
- 22 - We have our Science Lessons in the -----,
a. Library b. Playground c. corridor d. Laboratory
- 23- Ido exercise in the -----,
a. toilet b. classroom c. gym d. gates
- 24- I talk to my friends at ----- in the playground.
a. Break b. class c. classroom d. lesson
- 25- Hossam went to the changing room to ----- ready for P. E.
a. have b. get c. take d. learn
- 26- Jin ----- karate for five hours.
a. goes b. walks c. likes d. practises
- 27- The music room is ----- the end of the corridor.
a. in b. with c. at d. for
- 28- I went to the ----- and I washed my face.
a. classroom b. toilet c. gym d. school
- 29- The changing room is ----- the first floor.
a. on b. at c. to d. about
- 30- I go to my school ----- bus .
a. on b. in c. by d. with
- 31- My classroom is ----- the library .
a. next b. opposite c. in d. on

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - Our school library is on the first flour. (-----)
- 2 - My class room is on the second floor, so I walk down the stairs (-----)
- 3 - I practise karate in the laboratory. (-----)
- 4 - Maths is a difficult school sport. (-----)
- 5 - Go up the stars to find the library. (-----)
- 6 - You should practice well to be a good footballer (-----)
- 7 - Marwa swept the flour before sleeping. (-----)

- 8 - We must be careless in the laboratory. (-----)
- 9 - We mustn't take in the lessons. (-----)
- 10 - What objects do you study at school. (-----)
- 11 - You must look write and left before you cross the road. (-----)
- 12 - I like playing the piano, So history is my favourite subject (-----)
- 13 - You must get ready for go to school. (-----)
- 14 - I usually go to school on bike. (-----)
- 15 - Do you go to the cinema by foot . (-----)
- 16 - We go to the laboratory for maths lessons. (-----)
- 17 - We should watch our hands before eating. (-----)
- 18 - The toilet is downstairs so, I walk up the stairs. (-----)
- 19 - The corridor is opposite to the toilets. (-----)

التعبير عن القدره على القيام بعمل معين أو عدم القدره للقيام بهذا العمل Ability

المصدر + Can + الفاعل

المصدر + Can't + الفاعل

EX:-We can read English well.

EX:-We can drive the car week.

EX:-We can't play football.

EX:-We sleep early.

Necessity and obligation

التعبير عن الضروره والالزام

المصدر + must + الفاعل

المصدر + mustn't + الفاعل

EX:-You must look right and left before you cross the road.

EX:-You must speak English very well to be an English teacher.

EX:-You mustn't talk in the library.

EX:-You mustn't drink water from the river, It's not clean.

EX:-You mustn't look at the sun without sunglasses.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- You ----- eat in the changing room.
a. Must b. mustn't c. can d. should?
- 2- The bus ----- go into the playground, so it stops outside the school .
a. Must b. mustn't c. can d. should?
- 3- You ----- Open the window if you ask the teacher.
a. can't b. mustn't c. can d. shouldn't
- 4- You ----- go to your friend's house, but come home at six o'clock.
a. can't b. mustn't c. can d. shouldn't
- 5- We ----- help our mother with the house work every day.
a. must b. mustn't c. must not d. shouldn't
- 6- I can't go out. I ----- do my homework .
a. must b. mustn't c. can d. shouldn't
- 7- You ----- be good at sports to go to a sports school .
a. must b. mustn't c. can't d. shouldn't
- 8- You ----- Listen to your father's advice.
a. Must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. can't



- 9 - You ----- be careful when you cross the road.
a. Must b. mustn't c. can d. can't
- 10- To be fit, I ----- practise two hours a day .
a. Must b. mustn't c. have d. can't
- 11- The students can't ----- downstairs after the break .
a. go b. to go c. going d. went
- 12- The school bus can't go ----- the play ground.
a. on b. for c. at d. into
- 13- I ----- Stay after that because I have a lot of homework to do.
a. Must b. can c. may d. can't
- 14- You must help your mother ----- The kitchen.
a. in b. on c. at d. of
- 15- You ----- go out. It isn't allowed.
a. Can b. can't c. must d. mustn't
- 16- The laboratory is on the second floor, I walk up the -----
a. Stairs b. playground c. toilets d. corridor
- 17- I can watch television ----- the evenings.
a. In b. on c. at d. by
- 18- Karate is Jin Zhang's favourite -----
a. Subject b. sport c. song d. speech
- 19- A student ----- study hard,
a. Shouldn't b. mustn't c. must d. can't
- 20- He is a very clever student. He ----- answers the question easily.
a. Shouldn't b. mustn't c. can d. is
- 21- I am sorry, I ----- play football. I have got too much work.
a. Should b. must c. can d. can't
- 22- The English classroom is at the end of the -----
a. stairs b. playground c. toilets d. corridor
- 23- We can borrow and read books in the -----
a. toilet b. library c. laboratory d. corridor
- 24- He went to the changing room to ----- ready for P.E.
a. get b. have c. make d. take
- 25- The ----- of the garden are very high so I can't climb them.
a. offices b. gates c. pools d. corridors
- 26- The best time to talk to your friends at -----
a. class b. break c. library d. lessons
- 27- Marwa is a student at a ----- school Cairo .
a. sport b. sports c. sporty d. sports'
- 28- Its funny ----- with your friends on holidays.
a. playing b. to play c. plays d. played
- 29- You ----- talk in the library.
a. must b. mustn't c. can't d. aren't
- 30- Is the library ----- the ground floor?
a. at b. in c. on d. of
- 31- You can ----- the window if you ask the teacher.
a. open b. to open c. opens d. opening



- 32- We ----- be careful in the laboratory.
a. can't b. can c. must d. mustn't
- 33- When I finish my homework, I can ----- television.
a. watching b. watches c. watch d. watched
- 34- You ----- go out now. It's raining.
a. can b. must c. can't d. isn't
- 35- You ----- put your feet on the chair. Don't do that.
a. can b. mustn't c. must d. can't
- 36- I ----- play tennis but, I can't play basketball.
a. must b. can c. mustn't d. can't
- 37 You ----- speak English very well to be an English teacher.
a. can't b. must c. mustn't d. can
- 38 You ----- swim in the sea on a windy day.
a. can b. must c. mustn't d. have
- 39 We ----- put hot food in the fridge It's wrong.
a. can b. must c. mustn't d. doesn't
- 40- You ----- stand up when another teacher walks into your Classroom.
a. can't b. can c. must d. mustn't
- 41- I ----- watch TV but I can't go out.
a. mustn't b. can c. must d. can't
- 42- You must be good ----- sports to go to a sports school.
a. in b. at c. of d. for
- 43 Sarah ----- visit you this evening because she must do her Homework.
a. can't b. must c. will d. can
- 44- Only engineers ----- use that computer.
a. were b. have c. can d. are
- 45 Go downstairs; she's waiting at the end of the -----.
a. stairs b. floors c. walls d. windows
- 46- We get out of the school from the school -----.
a. windows b. floors c. gates d. classrooms
- 47- You ----- look at the sun. This will hurt your eyes.
a. mustn't b. must c. can d. should
- 48 You ----- wash fruit before you eat it.
a. can't b. mustn't c. has d. must
- 49- I ----- go to the club to day because I must study for my exams.
a. can't b. can c. must d. doesn't
- 50- You ----- put your hand up to ask a question in class.
a. can't b. must c. isn't d. mustn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - You must drink water from the river. It isn't clean. (-----)
- 2 - What rooms do you study at school? (-----)
- 3 - In China, you must be at bad at sports to go to a sports school. (-----)
- 4 - How often rooms have you been into today at school. (-----)
- 5 - You can watching TV in the evening. (-----)
- 6 - You can study hard before exams. (-----)



- 7 - What can you do at home. (-----)
 8 - Ali can speaks English very well. (-----)
 9 - If water is dirty, it becomes healthy. (-----)
 10- We must to go to the laboratory for our science lessons (-----)
 11- I can see my friends when I have tests the next day. (-----)
 12- You mustn't arrive to school before lessons start. (-----)
 13- I can go to the park, but I mustn't go to the cinema. (-----)
 14- Ali can speaks English in Mrs. Mona's classroom. (-----)
 15- You must eat not in the changing room. (-----)
 16- Do you like to go to a sport school? (-----)
 17- Students get ready for E.P in the changing room. (-----)
 18- Where do students usually go lessons? (-----)

*- LESSONS (3-4-)

VOCABULARY

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Tour	جولة	Windy day	يوم عاصف	Ground floor	نور ارضي
First floor	الدور الاول	Pack	يحزم امتهه	Compare	يقارن
Location	موقع	Alphabetical	الهجائي	Show	يوضح
Second floor	الدور الثاني	order	الترتيب	Diagram	رسم بياني
Helpful	متعاون	School rules	قواعد المدرسة	Quiz	اختبار
Way	طريقه	Hurt	يؤذي - يصيب	Middle	منتصف
Polite	مؤدب	office	مكتب	arrive	يصل

*- PREPOSITIONS AND EXPRESSIONS - حروف جر وتعبيرات

In thr middle of	في منتصف	Put your hand up	ارفع يدك	At the end	في نهاية
Arrive at	يصل مكان صغير	Walk into	يدخل	At the bottom of	في قاع
Arrive in	يصل مكان كبير	At the top of	في أعلى	The door to the	الباب المؤدى لـ
On the left	على الشمال	On each side of	على جانبي	On the right	على اليمين
Talk to	يتحدث الى	Important for	مهم لـ	Put on	يرتدى

*- الكلمة وعكسها -

WORD	OPPOSITE	WORD	OPPOSITE
Stand up	قف	Polite	مؤدب
Important	مهم	Different	مختلف
Arrive	يصل	Helpful	متعاون
Up	أعلى	Outside	خارج
Good at	جيد في	Come	يأتي
Sit down	أجلس	Impolite	غير مؤدب
Unimportant	غير مهم	The same	نفس
Leave	يغادر	Helpless	غير متعاون
Down	أسفل	Inside	داخل
Bad at	سيء في	Go	يذهب

تصريفات أفعال هامة

Go - want - gone	يذهب	Come - came - come	يأتي
Say - Said - Said	يقول	Peak - Spoke - Spoken	يتحدث
Drink - drank - drunk	يشرب	Put - put - put	يضع
See - saw - seen	يرى	Give - gave - given	يعطي
Show - showed - showed	يوضح	Read - read - read	يقرأ
Hurt - hurt - hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم	Meet - met - met	يقابل
Run - ran - ran	يجري	Fall - fell - fallen	يسقط
Get ready - got ready - got ready	يستعد	Put on - put on - put on	يرتدى

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

Pack	يعبأ - يحزم أمتعته	Back	خلف - ظهر	Way	طريقه - وسيلة	Why	لماذا
Rules	قواعد قوانين	Roles	أدوار	Hurt	يؤذي	Heart	قلب

LANGUAGE NOTES

ARRIVE (AT) يصل لمكان صغير | ARRIVE (IN) يصل لمكان كبير

EX:-We arrived in Cairo yesterday.

EX:-We arrived at school early.

STOP + v + ing يتوقف عن

EX:-He must stop smoking.

EX:-We stopped playing football.

The best time to + المصدر | It's time to + المصدر

EX:-The best time to pack your bag for school is now EX:-It's time to ghome.

The most polite way to + المصدر is + الجملة

EX:-The most polite way to ask a question in class is to put your hand up.

لاعطاء معلومات عن مواقع الاماكن Giving the location of places

عند السؤال عن مكان معين باستخدام اداى الاستفهام Where بمعنى أين نستخدم هذه الصيغة :
Where is + (أسم المكان) ?

EX:-Where is the library?

للاجابة على هذا السؤال واعطاء الاتجاه نستخدم : - **هنا** -

It's+ (At the bottom of the stairs.)

(At the end of the corridor.)

(At the top of the stairs.)

(In the middle.)

(In the ground) or On the first floor or on the second floor

(Upstairs)

(Downstairs)

(Opposite + المكان)

(Next to + المكان)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1- The best time to your bag for school is the night before school.

a. Pick

b. Back

c. pack

d. bike

2- The best time to arrive school is before lessons start.

a. In

b. at

c. on

d. for

3- the most polite way to ask a question at school is to put your..... Up first

a. Head

b. leg

c. hand

d. knee

4- The best time to talk to your friends is at

a. The lessons

b. the class

c. break

d. night



- 5- We are at the top of the stairs----- the first floor.
a. On b. of c. at d. to
- 6- The office is at the----- of the stairs on the right.
a. Next b. bottom c. between d. opposite
- 7- The door to the playground is ----- the end of the corridor.
a. on b. of c. at d. in
- 8- We go to the playground at -----.
a. Break b. the lesson c. the class d. the room
- 9- The headmaster will give a ----- of our school .
a. Journey b. tour c. trip d. flight
- 10- I don't need to go up stairs. I live on the ----- floor .
a. Third b. second c. ground d. first
- 11- The best time to ----- your bag for school is the night before school.
a. Pick b. sell c. pack d. bike
- 12- What were you doing when I ----- you yesterday?
a. Phoning b. phoned c. phones d. phone
- 13- Salma is a new girl in our class. I will ----- Her where to go to for her Lessons.
a. Walk b. show c. visit d. go
- 14- Can you tell me what the best ----- Of our new school will be.
a. Location b. street c. town d. city
- 15-It's ----- ti put your hand up to ask a question in class.
a. Wrong b. late c. polite d. impolite
- 16- You can ----- your sports clothes in the changing room.
a. Clean up b. take care c. put off d. put on
- 17- You mustn't put hot food in the -----.
a. Cupboard b. cup c. fridge d. box
- 18- The room ----- The right is the library.
a. on b. in c. at d. with
- 19- The best time to arrive at school is before lessons -----.
a. Explain b. finish c. end d. start
- 20- If you doesn't run in the corridor, you won't fall or----- clothes.
a. feel b. hurt c. kill d. eat
- 21- The most polite way to ask a question in class, is to put your hand -----.
a. Out b. of c. up d. down
- 22- It's ----- so the students are in the play ground.
a. break b. morning c. afternoon d. lessons
- 23-We must follow our school -----.
a. roles b. rules c. stairs d. rolls
- 24-The office is at the bottom of the stairs ----- The right.
a. on b. in c. at d. of
- 25-The library is ----- the laboratory ends the gym .
a. Opposite b. next to c. between d. in
- 26-Can you give the ----- of different places in the school?
a. Location b. Place c. time d. classroom
- 27- In a dictionary, words are in ----- order.
a. Alphabetical b. chemical c. alphabet d. original



- 28- My classroom is ----- the laboratory.
a. Next b. opposite c. between d. in
- 29- Some people put on their clothes in the changing room before they -----P.E.
a. Give b. do c. make d. take
- 30- The----- is the place where we have our science lessons.
a. Corridor b. library c. laboratory d. playground
- 31- Our classroom is number 6 . It is ----- the middle.
a. on b. in c. at d. of
- 32- Only teachers ----- teach students at school.
a. Can't b. mustn't c. won't d. can
- 33-We must follow our school rules, It's break, So they are in the-----.
a. Playground b. laboratory c. classroom d. office
- 34-You ----- Be careful when you use the knife.
a. Can't b. won't c. must d. mustn't
- 35- ----- classrooms are ours?
a. Where b. when c. which d. why
- 36-There are classrooms on each side of the-----of different places in the school?
a. Library b. laboratory c. gym d. corridor
- 37- My favourite room is the ----- Where we do P.E.
a. laboratory b. gym c. library d. toilet
- 38- A ----- is between rooms in a building.
a. corridor b. classroom c. playground d. library
- 39- There is a bus stop outside the school -----,
a. break b. changing room c. laboratory d. gates
- 40- I can talk to my friends at ----- at school.
a. break b. bank c. library d. class
- 41- Our new friend gave us a quick ----- of his house.
a. address b. answer c. train d. tour
- 42- Last week, I ----- my bags and travelled to Alexandria.
a. talked b. started c. packed d. watched
- 43- When we do P.E, we put on sports -----,
a. foods b. clothes c. houses d. classes
- 44- To put your hand up is the most polite ----- to ask a question.
a. way b. street c. road d. lesson
- 45- The ----- time to arrive at school is before lessons start.
a. worst b. best c. most d. least
- 46-The students must do polite things and school -----,
a. Classrooms b. rules c. corridors d. stairs
- 47- When another teacher walks into your classroom, you must ----- Up.
a. put b. get c. wake d. stand
- 48- My father will ----- me a tour of Cairo tomorrow.
a. give b. take c. use d. come
- 49- We have a ----- for our lessons each term.
a. Journey b. night c. place d. timetable
- 50- I ----- go to the cinema every Friday. It's Okay.
a. can't b. mustn't c. must d. can



- 51- You ----- run in the classroom. The teacher will be angry.
a. can b. must c. mustn't d. has
- 52- You must ----- careful when you cross the road.
a. is b. be c. are d. am
- 53- She ----- Watch TV today. She has a test tomorrow.
a. can b. can't c. must d. is
- 54- The opposite of downstairs is -----.
a. stairs b. bottom c. upstairs d. top
- 55- The school is the place where students -----.
a. learn b. teach c. stay d. allow
- 56- We mustn't talk in the lessons, but we ----- talk at break.
a. mustn't b. can't c. must d. can
- 57- The opposite of downstairs is -----.
a. stairs b. bottom c. upstairs d. top
- 58- The school is the place where students -----.
a. learn b. teach c. stay d. allow
- 59- We mustn't talk in the lessons, but we ----- talk at break.
a. mustn't b. can't c. must d. can

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - My classroom is on the second flour. (-----)
- 2 - There is a blue stop outside the school doors. (-----)
- 3 - In the bottom of the stairs is the door to the playground. (-----)
- 4 - How often do you make a quiz at school. (-----)
- 5 - Is class 3 opposite or downstairs. (-----)
- 6 - Is the laboratory in the ground floor or the first floor? (-----)
- 7 - You mustn't wash fruit before you eat it. (-----)
- 8 - At break , you can't eat and drink . (-----)
- 9 - I will give you a tower of our school. (-----)
- 10 - The room in the right is the library. (-----)
- 11 - The toilets are opposite to the office (-----)
- 12 - We always make P.E in the gym. (-----)
- 13 - We must stop talk in class. (-----)
- 14 - When did Adel arrive at Cairo? (-----)
- 15 - In the end of the corridor, there is a library. (-----)
- 16 - If you don't run in the corridor, you won't feel. (-----)
- 17 - When is the best time to back your bag. (-----)
- 18 - My room is stairs. (-----)
- 19 - It's impolite to stand up when you ask a question. (-----)
- 20 - The library is next to the headmaster's office. (-----)
- 21 - The toilets are in the ground floor. (-----)
- 22 - School roles are important. (-----)
- 23 - We can't see well in the bottom of the sea. (-----)
- 24 - People put on their sports clothes in the change room. (-----)
- 25 - You must pack your school bag the night after school. (-----)
- 26 - My school is opposite to the railway station. (-----)
- 27- The library is on the first flour. (-----)



- 28-The best time to arrive at school is after lessons start. (-----)
 29-Children play football in the laboratory at school. (-----)
 30-Go downtown, not upstairs. (-----)
 31-Can I used your bike, Tarek? (-----)
 32-Our class has two windows. (-----)

1 complete the following dialogue with one word each:

Karim is telling Farid about his school.

Karim : How do you go to school ?

Farid : I go there by the school -----

Karim : ----- does it start going there?

Farid : ----- 7:00 a.m.

Karim : How -----pupils does it carry?

Farid : 50 pupils.

2 complete the following dialogue with one word each:

Roquia is asking Samya to give her a tour.

Roquia : I am new in your school. Can you give me a tour?

Samya : Of course, Let's start with this -----

Roquia : -----are there in the corridor?

Samya : These are classes for first year.

Roquia : -----is the library?

Samya : It's on the ground.

3 complete the following dialogue with one word each:

Lili wants to go to the library.

Lili : I want to reach the school library.

Her friend : Of course, -----do you want to go there ?

Lili : Because I would like to -----some books.

Her friend : What kind of books do you -----?

Lili : Science books .

Her friend : You can ask the science -----

4 complete the following dialogue with one word each:

Soha asks Manal for help

Soha : Excuse -----, Can you help me?

Manal : Of course.

Soha : Where is the science -----?

Manal : It is on the first -----.

Soha : Is it next -----class 2 A.

Manal : Yes, It is.



5 complete the following dialogue with one word each:

Ayman and Karim are talking about school

Ayman : Hello Karim, How do you -----to school?

Karim : I go to school on-----

Ayman : Why?

Karim : Because it's -----to my house.

Ayman : What are your -----school subjects?

Karim : Mine are English, maths and science.

=====

6 complete the following dialogue with one word each:

Samir is asking Ali about his life.

Samir : -----is your name?

Ali : My name is Ali.

Samir : What's your -----?

Ali : I am a -----I work in hospital.

Samir : -----do you live?

Ali : I live in Tanta.

=====

7 complete the following dialogue with one word each:

Ali is asking Ahmed about some places in their school.

Ali : Excuse me, can I ----- you some questions?

Ahmed : Sure.

Ali : -----is the gym?

Ahmed : It is on the ground -----.

Ali : And where is the library?

Ahmed : It is at the ----- of the corridor.

=====

8- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Hager and Sama are talking about science

Hager : Do you like-----?

Sama : Yes, I do.

Hager : Where do you have your science -----?

Sama : We have our science lessons in the -----.

Hager : Where is it?

Sama : It's -----to the library.

1-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Omar : What's your favourite place in you school?

Adham : -----

Omar : Me too, I like doing sport very much.

2-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Amal : -----?

Nahed : Classroom A is next to the laboratory.

3-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Omar : Where can you do P.E at your school?

Adham : -----.



4-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Tarek : -----?

Mohamed: the library is next to classroom C.

Tarek : Thank you. I have to go downstairs.

5-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ayman : -----?

Noor : the library is next to classroom one, on the ground floor.

6-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Tarek : There is an office in our school, Where is it?

Mohamed-----?

Tarek : Thank you.

7-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

1) Osman : Where is the toilet?

Samir : -----.

2) Wageeh : -----.

Aziz : The office is opposite classroom 3A.

8- Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

Teacher : What is the best time to arrive at school?

Ziad : -----.

Youssef : -----?

Adham : I can put on my sports clothes in the changing room.

IMPORTANT PARAGRAPH موضوعات تعبير هامة

„ A school day „

I get up at 6 o'clock. I have my breakfast with my parents. I go to a preparatory school; I have got English, maths, history and Arabic. We have our science lessons in the laboratory. We mustn't talk in the lessons but we can talk at break.

أستيقظ الساعة السادسة. أتناول فطاري مع والدي. أذهب الى المدرسة الإعدادية. اخذ مادة الانجليزي والرياضيات والتاريخ واللغة العربية. نحن نأخذ حصّة العلوم في المعمل. يجب علينا الا نتكلم في الحصص لكن يمكننا أن نتكلم في الفسحة.

„ Your school „

I go to a large school. We have 40 classrooms. We also have a laboratory where we study chemistry. My favourite room is the gym where we do P.E. There are two big gates into our school. There is a big library in it. I like my friends and my teachers. My teachers are helpful. They give us advice to be good pupils.

أذهب الى مدرسه واسعة. لدينا 40 فصل ز لدينا أيضا معمل حيث ندرس الكيمياء. غرقتي المفضلة هي صالة الألعاب حيث نمارس التربية البدنية. يوجد بوابتين كبيرتين داخل مدرستنا. يوجد فيها مكتبة كبيره. أحب أصدقائي ومدرسينا. مدرسينا متعاونون وطيّبون. انهم يمدوننا بالنصيحة لكي نكون طلاب جيدين.

„ Your classroom „

I like my classroom so mush. My classroom is very nice and wide. My friends and I keep our classroom clean. We have a smart board. Our classroom is full of useful posters. There are thirty pupils in our classroom.

أحب فصلي كثيرا جدا . فصلي جميل وواسع . أنا و اصدقائي نحافظ على فصلنا نظيف . لدينا سبورة جميلة . فصلنا مملوء بالملصقات . ويجد به 30 تلميذ .

„ Your favourite subject „

English is my favourite subject. I like it because it helps me log into the internet. When I grow up, I want to be a teacher of English. I revise my English lessons every day, Also, I speak to my friends in class in English. Enough practice makes me perfect in English.

اللغة الانجليزية هي مادتي المفضلة . أحبها لأنها تساعدني أن أدخل على الانترنت . عندما أكبر أريد أن أكون مدرس لغة انجليزية . أراجع دروسي كل يوم . وأيضا التحدث مع أصدقائي في الفصل بها . والممارسة كافية لتجعلني ممتاز فيها .

UNIT TWO AROUND THE CITY

LESSONS (1-2)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Famous	مشهور	Lion statue	تمثال على شكل	Visit	يزور
castle	قلعه	Citadel	قلعه	Visitor	زائر
Pavement	رصيف	Monuments	اثار	Palace	قصر
Towers	أبراج	Protect	يحمي	East side	جانب شرقي
View	منظر - مشهد	Cross	يعبر	Island	جزيره
Wonderful	رائع - مذهش	Several	العديد من	Notebook	كراسه
bridge	كوبرى	popular	شعبي - محبوب	Cousin	بن عم - خال
King	ملك	Corner	ركن	Tourist	سائح
Complete	يكمل	Century	قرن	Begin	يبدأ
mosques	مساجد	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	Music	موسيقى
Leaflet	منشور - كتيب	Building	مبنى	Necessity	ضروره

Prepositions

حروف الجر

Around	حول	At each end	على كلا النهايتين	Cross over	يعبر من فوق
Walk along	يمشي بطول	Walk across	يمشي بعرض	From...to..	من ... الى
Late for	متأخر على	Go to bed	يذهب للفراش	at a restaurant	في مطعم
From a long way away	من على مسافة بعيدة	Take + TO +	المصدر + فتره	Talk about	يتحدث عن
Visit a place	يزور مكان	Important for	مهم ل	Want to +	المصدر
		Open a bridge	يفتح كوبرى	Do a test	يؤدي اختبار

الكلمه وعكسها

WORD	OPPOSITE	WORD	OPPOSITE
Famous	مشهور	Unknown	غير معروف
Wide	واسع	Narrow	ضيق
Begin	يبدأ	Finish	ينتهي
Happy	سعيد	Unhappy	غير سعيد
High	عالي	Low	منخفض
		Busy	مشغول
		Beautiful	جميل
		Early	مبكرا
		Pleased	مسرور
		Popular	محبوب
		Free / empty	حر
		Ugly	قبيح
		Late	متأخر
		Sad	حزين
		un popular	غير محبوب

LANGUAGE NOTES

1- Take + time (فتره) to + الفعل في المصدر

EX:- It took eight years to complete .

EX:- The train takes 3 hours to arrive at the train station .

2- Make + الفعل في المصدر + مفعول

EX:- He makes Ali practice reading novels .

EX:- I make Faten cook the food .

3- Feel + صفة

EX:- I feel happy .

EX:- She feels sad.

4- DO (homework - a test - a project - a quiz)

EX:- Ahmed does his homework .

5- However,

بمعنى (مع ذلك) وتستخدم للربط بين جملتين متناقضتين

EX:- He studied a lot . However he didn't get high marks.
 ذاكر بجد ومع ذلك لم يحصل على درجات

يجيب على الأسئلة بطريقة صحيحة Get the answer correct

EX:- Ahmed did a test last week . He got all the answers correct.

The 382 - metre - long Qasr al - nil Bridge 382 كوبرى قصر النيل البالغ طول

EX:- The 382-metre-long Qasr al - Nil bridge crosses over the Nile .

لاحظ هنا أن الطول 382-metre-long

جاء قبل الاسم (كوبرى قصر النيل) فالطول هنا صفة والصفة لا تجمع لذلك لانضيف s

* - كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح - *

Towers أبراج	Tours جولات سياحية	Cross يعبر	across عبر خلال
Test اختبار	Taste يتذوق	Popular محبوب	polar قطبي

* - كلمات وتعريفاتها - *

Castle قلعه	a large building for important people مبنى كبير للناس المهمين
King ملك	The most important man in some countries أهم رجل في بعض الدول
Pavement رصيف	A place to walk on next to a road طريق نمشي عليه في جانب الطريق
Towers أبراج	Tall buildings or tall parts of a building مباني عاليه او أجزاء عاليه من مبنى
View منظر	What you can see from a high place ما يمكن أن تراه من مكان على
Wonderful جميل - رائع	Some thing that makes you feel happy or pleased شيء ما والذي يجعلك تشعر بالسعادة
Island جزيرة	Apiece of land surrounded by water قطعة من الأرض محاطة بالمياه

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1-King Fuad opened Qasr al - Nil ----- 1933.

a. Tower b. pyramid c. castle d. bridge

2- The castle had four -----, one on each corner.

a. Pavements b. towers c. kings d. queens



- 3- Salah al - Din was the ----- Of Egypt in the twelfth century.
a. Princess b. prince c. king d. queen
- 4- Many people like to walk along the ----- Of the bridge in the evening.
a. Wall b. pavement c. fence d. stairs
- 5- You can walk across Qasr al - Nil Bridge from the east side ----- Gezira Island.
a. To b. at c. in d. of
- 6- The citadel took eight years -----.
a. completed b. completing c. complete d. to complete
- 7- The Citadel in Cairo is one of the most important ----- in Egypt.
a. Sports b. subjects c. monuments d. seasons
- 8- Salah al-Din built the castle to ----- Cairo.
a. Protect b. attack c. see d. cross
- 9- I love this book. It's a ----- story.
a. Bad b. wonderful c. wild d. wide
- 10- A ----- is a large building for important people.
a. Library b. castle c. flat d. house
- 11- A/An ----- is what you can see from a high place.
a. View b. review c. revision d. interview
- 12- The road through the town has a wide ----- for people to walk on.
a. Station b. stop c. pavement d. wall
- 13- Salah al Din was the ----- of Egypt in the twelfth century.
a. king b. prince c. hero d. superman
- 14- ----- Are tall buildings or tall parts of a building?
a. Cities b. Towers c. Towns d. countries
- 15- King Fuad opened Qasr al-Nil ----- in 1933.
a. Island b. Way c. Road d. Bri--dge
- 16- The citadel in Cairo is one of the most important ----- in Egypt.
a. Libraries b. monuments c. houses d. mosques
- 17- There are two lions ----- on each side of Qasr al-Nil Bridge .
a. Statues b. buildings c. towers d. pavements
- 18- You can see wonderful ----- across the River Nile.
a. Views b. deserts c. lakes d. seas
- 19- A ----- is a place to protect people against enemies .
a. Bridge b. castle c. pavement d. tower
- 20- The castle has four -----, one on each corner .
a. Classrooms b. towers c. bridges d. towns
- 21- The school took to years to -----
a. Complete b. play c. scored d. destroy
- 22- Tourists love to visit Cairo -----
a. Flower b. Power c. Tower d. Shower
- 23- King Fuad opened Qasr al-Nil Bridge 1933.
a. At b. in c. on d. for
- 24- There is a beautiful ----- from the top of the mountains.
a. Pavement b. tower c. king d. view
- 25- I love this book, It's a ----- story .
a. Wonderful b. tower c. castles d. view



- 26- Qasr al-Nil Bridge has two lion ----- at each end.
a. Towers b. castles c. bridges d. statues
- 27- A----- is a place to protect people against enemies .
a. bridge b. castle c. pavement d. tower
- 28- The castle has four -----, one on each corner .
a. Classrooms b. towers c. bridges d. towns
- 29- The school took eight years to -----
a. Complete b. play c. scored d. destroy
- 30- Tourists love to visit Cairo -----
a. Flower b. Power c. Tower d. Shower
- 31- It ----- six years to complete the primary stage .
a. Made b. took c. Gave d. put
- 32- The ----- was built to protect Cairo.
a. Tower b. castle c. bridges d. statues
- 33- A king usually lives in a -----
a. bridge b. lighthouse c. palace d. tower
- 34- Dr Magdi Yaqoub is very -----, all people know him .
a. Busy b. unknown c. known d. strong
- 35- The film -----TV last night was very good.
a. on b. in c. at d. of
- 36- It-----six years to complete the primary stage .
a. Made b. took c. gave d. put
- 37- We use a pavement to -----on.
a. Eat b. sleep c. study d. walk
- 38- Mrs Mona always remembers her kind English -----.
a. Teach b. taught c. teacher d. teaching
- 39- Something that makes you feel happy or pleased is -----
a. Unhappy b. wonderful c. sad d. unimportant
- 40- The film -----TV last night was very good.
a. On b. in c. at d. of
- 41-Qasr al-Nil Bridge ----- in 1933.
a. Went b. opened c. became d. felt
- 42- It takes bassem half an hour ----- at his school.
a. arrive b. arrives c. arriving d. to arrive
- 43- Salah al-Din al- Ayouby built the Citadel to ----- Cairo.
a. protect b. fight c. arrive d. complete
- 44- A ----- is a place to walk on next to the rood.
a. gate b. pavement c. step d. bridge
- 45- There is a beautiful ----- from the top of the mountain.
a. century b. corridor c. view d. leaflet
- 46- His jokes always make me -----.
a. laugh b. laughing c. to laugh d. laughs
- 47- The museum has a big number of -----.
a. sandwiches b. classes c. statues d. beds
- 48- Salah al-Din was the king of Egypt in the twelfth -----.
a. century b. year c. country d. time



- 49- I enjoyed visiting Cairo -----; it's very tall.
a. park b. museum c. Tower d. Cinema
- 50- The road ----- the town has a wide pavement for people to walk on.
a. next b. through c. above d. over
- 51- The king is the ----- of a country.
a. ruler b. writer c. driver d. teacher
- 52- The ----- was built strongly to protect the city.
a. museum b. hospital c. hotel d. castle
- 53- Luxor is full of ancient -----.
a. monuments b. citadels c. lions d. islands
- 54- The ----- in Cairo has four museums.
a. Nile b. mosque c. Citadel d. Bridge
- 55- We sat ----- the table for lunch.
a. around b. across c. over d. above
- 56- The 12- ----- long canal is clean.
a. metres b. kilometers c. metre d. grams

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - Moments are important places in history. (-----)
- 2 - A station is a place to walk next to the road. (-----)
- 3 - How long did it cost to build the citadel? (-----)
- 4 - You can visit several zoos in the citadel. (-----)
- 5 - The road through the town has a wide tower for people. (-----)
- 6 - You can see the pyramids from along a way . (-----)
- 7 - I would like to visit Salah al-Din' bridge (-----)
- 8 - The opposite of popular is unimportant . (-----)
- 9 - The 382-metres-long Qasr al-Nil Bridge, cross over the Nile (-----)
- 10 - The citadel took eight years complete . (-----)
- 11 - We did a test last week, Hanan get all the answers correct (-----)
- 12 - I didn't arrive late at school . (-----)
- 13 - The citadel talk eight years to complete (-----)
- 14 - The 6th of October Bridge is always lazy . (-----)
- 15 - I love this book. It's a wonder story. (-----)
- 16 - The castle had four towers, one on each site. (-----)
- 17 - He made many tests to get the job. (-----)
- 18 - You can see the tower from a long way along. (-----)
- 19 - Pavements are tall buildings or tall parts of a building. (-----)
- 20 - We walked on the bridge cross the river (-----)

* - تمارين على الماضى البسيط - *

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1- We did a test last week and Hanan ----- all the answers correct.
a. Get b. gets c. got d. getting
- 2- We ----- lunch at a restaurant yesterday.
a. had b. has c. did d. eat
- 3- Mymother ----- To Aswan last Monday.
a. Travelled b. travel c. travels d. travelling

- 4-He ----- buy a camera yesterday.
a. Isn't b. doesn't c. hasn't d. didn't
- 5- A month ago, Noha ----- Aswan.
a. Visit b. visited c. will visit d. visits
- 6- I didn't ----- my friend Ali in the party.
a. Meet b. met c. meeting d. meets
- 7- Where ----- you go last night.
a. Do b. did c. does d. doing
- 8- Aida ----- an e - mail to Raneem last week.
a. Sends b. sending c. sent d. send
- 9- Salah al-Din ----- the citadel to protect Cairo.
a. Built b. builds c. build d. building
- 10- Last night, I ----- my home work with my brother .
a. Do b. does c. did d. doing
- 11- My brother ----- a new mobile yesterday.
a. Study b. studied c. studying d. studies
- 12- I ----- English a week ago.
a. Study b. don'tstudy c. didn'tstudy d. studying
- 13-When I was younger, I ----- To live with my grandma.
a. went b. go c. goes d) going
- 14- ----- You watch TV last night.
a. Have b. Did c. Are d. Can
- 15- A week ago, I ----- lunch at a very good restaurant.
a. Eat b. eaten c. ate d. eating
- 16- What time did you ----- your friends?
a. See b. saw c. seeing d. seen
- 17- Yesterday, Omar ----- to school by bus.
a. go b. goes c. went d. going
- 18- ----- to the museum last week? No, I didn't.
a. do you go b. did you go c. Can you go d. were you going
- 19-Magda's English lessons ----- About 40 minutes ago.
a. Began b. begin c. begun d. begins
- 20-The film on TV last night ----- very good.
a. is b. was c. be d. being
- 21-What did you ----- For breakfast this morning?
a. eat b. eats c. eating d. ate
- 22- What time ----- you play tennis last night?
a. Has b. did c. do d. does
- 23- What did you ----- yesterday?
a. Did b. do c. does d. doing
- 24-Ahmed's uncle ----- To England a month ago.
a. Travels b. travelled c. travel d. travelling
- 25- Ahmed ----- a new car last week.
a. bought b. buy c. buys d. buying
- 26- The Citadel ----- eight years to complete.
a. took b. takes c. take d. taking



- 27- Work in the Citadel began in 1176 and -----in 1183.
a. finish b. finished c. finishing d. finishes
- 28- We ----- a test last week and Hanan got all the answers correct.
a. do b. does c. did d. doing
- 29- Yesterday, Omar ----- to school by bus. He sat next to his friend.
a. goes b. went c. go d. going
- 30- I ----- your sister yesterday. Did she make that dress herself?
a. see b. sees c. seeing d. saw
- 31- We had lunch at a restaurant. The food ----- very good.
a. is b. be c. were d. was
- 32- Did you go to the museum last week? No, I -----.
a. did b. didn't c. don't d. doesn't
- 33- Magda's English lesson ----- about 40 minutes ago.
a. began b. begin c. begins d. beginning
- 34- The film on TV last night ----- very good.
a. were b. is c. was d. are
- 35- Where did you go ----- weekend?
a. into b. next c. in d. last
- 36- Where did you live when you ----- a child?
a. are b. be c. were d. is
- 37- A ----- is a large building for important people.
a. bridge b. dam c. castle d. corner
- 38- I don't like walking in ----- streets.
a. busy b. clean c. heavy d. tall
- 39- Qasr al- Nil Bridge crosses ----- The Nile.
a. at b. behind c. beside d. over
- 40- There ----- a bridge here, Gezira Bridge, in 1872.
a. is b. were c. was d. are
- 41- king Fuad ----- Qasr al- Nil Bridge in 1933.
a. opens b. opened c. open d. opening
- 42- Who ----- the citadel? Salah al-Din did.
a. build b. builds c. built d. building
- 43- What time ----- you go to bed last night?
a. do b. does c. did d. was
- 44- When did you last ----- your cousins?
a. saw b. sees c. see d. seeing

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - Yesterday, Omar goes to school by bus . (-----)
- 2 - I lived with my grandfather When I am younger . (-----)
- 3 - Are you go to the museum last week . (-----)
- 4 - We have lunch at a restaurant, The food was very good . (-----)
- 5 - Where did you went last summer . (-----)
- 6 - Do you speak to your uncle yesterday? (-----)
- 7 - Samy doesn't do all his homework last night (-----)
- 8 - Did you visited the citadel ? (-----)
- 9 - I didn't arrive late at school . (-----)

- 10 - We study English yesterday. (-----)
- 11 - The next time he went to a farm was about three years ago. (-----)
- 12 - Did you visited the citadel? (-----)
- 13 - When did you finished your homework? (-----)
- 14 - Last night, I have a very good night's sleep (-----)
- 15 - We saw an accident next night. (-----)
- 16 - My brother doesn't watch yesterday match. (-----)
- 17 - Last night, I do my homework. (-----)
- 18 - What did you ate for dinner yesterday? (-----)
- 19 - This building were a library in Roman times. (-----)
- 20 - Did you watch TV last night? Yes, I didn't. (-----)
- 21 - My school opened two years once. (-----)

LESSONS (3-4)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Interrupt	يقاطع	Fort Qaitbey	حصن قايتباي	Earthquake	زلزال
The Sultan	السلطان	Damage	يدمر - يتلف	Lighthouse	منارة
Muntazah	منتزه	Enter	يدخل	Dining room	حجرة المائدة
Bed room	غرفة النوم	Guide	مرشد	Describe	يصف
Traveler	مسافر	Stones	احجار	Wall	حائط
Gardens	حدائق	Island	جزيرة	Port	ميناء
Later	فيما بعد	Visitor	زائر	Reporter	مراسل
Weather	طقس	Whether	اذا - لو	Interesting	شيق - ممتع
That's why	لذلك	Palace	قصر	Dry	جاف
Partner	شريك	Continue	يستمر	Politely	بأدب
File	ملف	Leaflet	كتيب - نشرة	Research	بيحث - بحث
Dates	تواريخ - بلح	Facts	حقائق	Face	وجه - يواجه
Transport	النقل	Suddenly	فجأة	Energy	طاقة
tablet	جهاز لوحي	truck	شاحنة	fossil	حفري

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Look at	ينظر الى	In 1480	في عام 1480	The centre of Cairo	وسط القاهرة
Talk about	يتحدث عن	by 1480	بحلول عام 1480	Don't worry	لا تقلق
go up	يصعد	On the island	على الجزيرة	by the sea	بجوار البحر
Know well	يعرف جيدا	A view of the sea	منظر البحر	look like	يشبه
At night	ليلا	Decide to +	يقرر ان (المصدر)	get to	يصل الى
Around the castle	حول القلعة				

تصرفات أفعال هامة في الوحدة

Become - became - become	يصبح	Build - built - built	يبني
take - took - taken	يأخذ	do - did - done	يفعل - يؤدي
buy - bought - bought	يشترى	begin - began - begun	يبدأ
sit - sat - sat	يجلس	make - made - made	يصنع - يجعل
think - thought - thought	يعتقد	Remember - remembered - remembered	يتذكر
Drip - dripped - dripped	يقطر	Save - saved - saved	يوفر

كلمات وعكسها

الكلمة	عكسها	الكلمة	عكسها
Higher أكثر ارتفاعا	Lower أكثر انخفاضاً	Politely بأدب	Rudely بأقل ادب
Dry جاف	Wet مبلل	Take يأخذ	Give يعطى
Strong قوى	Weak ضعيف		

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

Palace قصر	Place مكان	Truck شاحنة	Trick خدعه
tablet جهاز لوحي	Table منضدة	Wall حائط	whale حوت
Dress فستان	Address عنوان		

أماكن وأشخاص مشهورين

The lighthouse of Alexandria منارة اسكندرية	The Muntazah palace قصر المنتزه
Fort Qaitbey حصن قايتباي	King Ptolemy الملك بطليموس
King Abbas II الملك عباس الثانى	Salah al-Din's Castle قلعة صلاح الدين

LANGAUGE NOTES

- **SORRY FOR + V + ing or noun** **SORRY TO + المصدر**
EX:- I am sorry for that mistake . **EX:- I am sorry for making that mistake**
EX:- I am sorry to interrupt , but did the king live in the castle ? .

Start يبدأ × Finish ينهى + V + ing

- EX:- King Ptolemy started building the lighthouse in about 290BCE .**
- EX:- He finished building it in about 283 BCE .**

- **Dry** (يجفف - جفاف) بمعنى
EX:- The paint hasn't dried yet .
EX:- It was hot summer and the rivers were dry .

(floor - ground - land - earth)

- **Floor** : - بمعنى أرضية الحجره أو طابق أو دور فى مبنى
EX:- There was water on the kitchen floor .
EX:- My flat is on the ninth floor .
- **Ground** : - بمعنى الارض التى تمشى عليها
EX:- The plane crashed after it left the ground .
- **Land** : - بمعنى الارض (وهى عباره عن الرمال والصخور)
EX:- In the 6th October War, Egypt fought both at sea and on land .
- **Earth** : - بمعنى الكره الارضيه (كوكب الارض)
EX:- The earth is only planet that has life on it .
- **BCE** : - = Before Christian Era بمعنى قبل الميلاد وهى اختصار لكلمة
EX:- King Ptolemy started building the lighthouse of Alexandria in about 290 BCE .

عند مقاطعة شخص أثناء حديثه للسؤال عن شىء . فماذا يحدث من قول ؟

عند مقاطعة الشخص تستخدم	بعد المقاطعة والعودة للحديث
Excuse me -----?	بعد مقاطعة شخص ل كفى الحديث وإجابتك عن
Can I just ask -----?	استفساره . نستكمل الموضوع الأول باستخدام
Can I ask a question ?	Now , Where was I ?
I am sorry to interrupt , but -----	Ok , I was talking about -----



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1- Many earthquakes the lighthouse .
a. built b. decorated c. damaged d. interrupted
- 2- The Sultan of Egypt built a where the lighthouse once stood .
a. fort b. farm c. form d. front
- 3- An..... Is when the ground suddenly moves .
a. earthquake b. earth c. leave d. walk
- 4- A..... is a person who goes to many places .
a. tablet b. truck c. traveller d. tower
- 5- The lighthouse of Alexandria on a small island near Alexandria .
a. stopped b. stood c. sat d. built
- 6- If you a building, you go into it .
a. damage b. enter c. leave d. walk
- 7- A king usually lives in a
a. palace b. lighthouse c. room d. class
- 8- I am sorry to but I have a question .
a. cut b. put c. interrupt d. say
- 9- The Muntazah is by the sea in Alexandria .
a. Palace b. Tower c. Pavement d. Museum
- 10- The of Alexandria stood on a small island near Alexandria .
a. light b. light house c. House d. Muesum
- 11- Many damaged the lighthouse .
a. earth b. land c. grounds d. earthquakes
- 12- The Sultan of Egypt built Qaitbey.....
a. Fort b. Zoo c. Hospital d. Street
- 13- King Ptolemy building Alexandria Lighthouse in about 290BCE .
a. visited b. used c. stood d. started
- 14- The Muntazah palace has two towers and high
a. walls b. balls c. holes d. goals
- 15- The other side of my house the sea .
a. takes b. faces c. falls d. feels
- 16- The lighthouse of Alexandria and fort Qaitbey are famous
a. foods b. schools c. subjects d. buildings
- 17- The Muntazah palace is the sea in Alexandria .
a. with b. of c. by d. to
- 18- Ibn Battuta was a famous He visited many places .
a. traveller b. teacher c. painter d. builder
- 19- The Sultan of Egypt used some from the old lighthouse .
a. bones b. stones c. halls d. balls
- 20- The lighthouse of Alexandria helps at night .
a. cars b. boats c. buses d. planes
- 21- Today, visitors can see Qaitbey when they visit Alexandria .
a. Farm b. Park c. Museum d. Fort
- 22- A is a strong building like a small castle .
a. fort b. field c. garden d. park



- 23- People usually build-----around gardens or between the rooms of a building
a. statues b. stairs c. corridors d. walls
- 24- Fort Qaitbey -----on a small island near Alexandria .
a. moves b. stands c. walks d. sinks
- 25- The fort was built -----Sultan Qaitbey in 1480 .
a. by b. on c. at d. from
- 26- When tourists visit Alexandria , They can go -----the fort .
a. by b. on c. at d. into
- 27- From the fort's walls, you get a beautiful -----of the sea.
a. time b. wall c. weather d. view
- 28- There are high walls -----the Muntazah palace .
a. of b. on c. around d. from
- 29- The -----is the most important man in some countries.
a. queen b. minister c. king d. soldier
- 30- A castle is a large building for -----people .
a. ordinary b. unimportant c. important d. bad
- 31-A/An ----- is when the ground suddenly moves.
a. earthquake b. earth c. island d. volcano
- 32- A ----- is a person who goes to many places.
a. tablet b. truck c. fort d. traveler
- 33-I'm sorry to -----, Can I ask a question?
a. tell b. catch c. interrupt d. stand
- 34-Monkeys take trees ----- a home.
a. to b. like c. for d. as
- 35- People usually build ----- around gardens or between the rooms of a building.
a. statues b. stairs c. walls d. corridors
- 36- King Ptolemy finished ----- the lighthouse in about 283 BCE.
a. building b. build c. to build d. built
- 37- ----- 1980, there was no metro in Cairo.
a. At b. Over c. By d. With
- 38- The Pyramids were built at the ----- of the Pharaohs.
a. time b. place c. date d. history
- 39- Many earthquakes ----- the lighthouse of Alexandria.
a. built b. interrupted c. faced d. damaged
- 40- If you ----- a building, you go into it.
a. damage b. enter c. leave d. walk
- 41- A king usually lives in a -----.
a. class b. lighthouse c. museum d. palace
- 42- You have a -----, It's your friend nahla.
a. rest b. tour c. visitor d. meal
- 43- A famous ----- wrote about the news.
a. reporter b. teacher c. doctor d. king
- 44- It took Zeinab two hours ----- her homework.
a. complete b. completing c. completed d. to complete



- 45- Boats can't sail in ----- rivers.
a. long b. dry c. wide d. clean
- 46- How ----- is it to the airport?
a. far b. heavy c. tall d. many
- 47- Qasr al-Nil Bridge has two ----- statues at each end.
a. lions b. lion's c. lion d. lions'
- 48- We have a lot of beautiful palaces in Egypt ----- the Montazah Palace in Alexandria.
a. as b. so c. so as d. as if
- 49- Salah al-Din was the king of Egypt in the ----- century.
a. twelve b. twelfth c. two d. twenty
- 50- If you ----- a building, you go into it.
a. damage b. enter c. leave d. walk
- 2- A king usually lives in a -----.
a. class b. lighthouse c. museum d. palace
- 51- You have a -----, It's your friend nahla.
a. rest b. tour c. visitor d. meal
- 52- A famous ----- wrote about the news.
a. reporter b. teacher c. doctor d. king
- 53- It took Zeinab two hours ----- her homework.
a. complete b. completing c. completed d. to complete
- 54- Boats can't sail in ----- rivers.
a. long b. dry c. wide d. clean
- 55- How ----- is it to the airport?
a. far b. heavy c. tall d. many

- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - Fort Qaitbey was built with Sultan Qaitbey. (-----)
- 2 - A king usually lives in a lighthouse. (-----)
- 3 - A fossil is a strong building like a small castle. (-----)
- 4 - The flood is when the ground suddenly moves. (-----)
- 5 - The other seed of Muntazah palace is the sea. (-----)
- 6 - Thousands of tours come to Egypt every year. (-----)
- 7 - What time do you go to bed last night. (-----)
- 8 - The king started building the castle at 1666. (-----)
- 9 - The lighthouse was built in the time of king Ptolemy. (-----)
- 10- The castle had four tours, one on each corner. (-----)
- 11 - You have a visit, It's your friend, Nahla. (-----)
- 12 - A famous report wrote about the news. (-----)
- 13 - We usually eat in the bed room. (-----)
- 14 - Mr Samy is a kind teach. (-----)
- 15- The candle of Alexandria was built at the time of king Ptolemy. (-----)
- 16- What's your history of birth? (-----)
- 17- A bridge is a strong building like a small castle. (-----)
- 18- The Giza Pyramids are unfamous all over the world. (-----)
- 19- We have our meals in the bedroom. (-----)
- 20- My cousin loves boats and wants to be a sail. (-----)



- 21-Thousands of tour come to Egypt (-----)
 22-Cairo Tower is a wonder building. (-----)
 23-Magda's English lesson begins about 40 minutes ago. (-----)
 24-When do you last meet your old friends (-----)

1- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Asmaa is talking to Amal on the phone

Asmaa : Hello , Amal, -----you yesterday , but nobody answered ?

Amal : Yes, We were all at the -----

Asmaa : What did you see there ?

Amal : We saw different animals.

Asmaa :Did you -----the lion .

Amal : Yes , I did . I was very -----when I saw it

2- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

A tourist asks a guide some questions

Guide : This building was a library in Roman times.

Tourist : Excuse me. Can I -----a question?

When did the Romans live here?

Guide : It was around 30 BCE. Now, -----was I?

Tourist : I'm sorry to ----- you, but what they liked doing?

Guide : They -----music, reading and sports.

Tourist : Thank you.

3- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

A tour guide is talking about transport

Tour guide :Thank you for coming to my talk about transport. I will now tell you how to get to Cairo international Airport .

Visitor 1 : Excuse me , Can I ask a -----? How far is the airport from here ?

Tour guide : It's about 15 kilometres from the centre of Cairo . Ok , I was -----about how to get there. The easiest way is to take a taxi .

Visitor 2 : I'm -----to interrupt, but there six people in my family. Can taxi take seven people. Now , Where was I ?

Tour guide : Don't ----- .Some taxis can take seven people. Now, where was I ?

Visitor 1 : You were talking about the easiest way to go to Cairo .

4- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

A tour guide is talking to some tourists

Tourist :Excuse me. Can I -----a question ?When did the Romans live here?

Guide : It was around 30 BCE, Now , -----was I ?

Tourist : You were saying that this was once the library .

Guide : Yes , People came here to read and to study .

Tourist : -----I just ask what they liked doing ?

Guide : They -----reading, music and sports .



5- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

A guide tells a tourist about a library

- Guide : This building was once a library in Roman times.
Tourist : Excuse me. Can I -----a question ? When did the Romans live here?
Guide : It was around 30 BCE, Now, Where -----I ?
Tourist : You were saying that this was once a -----.
Guide : Yes people came here to read and to study.
Tourist : Can I just ask what they liked-----?
Guide : They liked reading, music , sports -----etc.

6- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Mr Magdi and a student are talking about Alexandria

- Mr Magdi : We are going to talk about Alexandria .
Student : Oh , I like Alexandria so -----
Mr Magdi : Do you know Alexandria -----?
Student : Yes, It helps boats at night .
Mr Magd : Have you heard about the Muntazah-----?.
Student : Yes , It has a beautiful -----

1-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

- Yousra : When was your school built?
Galila : -----

2-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

- Tourist : I 'm sorry to interrupt , but----- ?
Guide : I was talking about Ibn Battuta .
Tourist : Who is Ibn Battuta ?
Guide : He is a famous traveller .

3-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

- Omar : Can I ask you ?
Adham : -----
Omar : Thank you . I will go and visit its gardens.

4-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

- Tarek : -----?
Mohamed : King Ptolemy built it in about 283 BCE .
Tarek : I hope I will visit it soon .

5-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

- Ayman : ----- ?
Noor : I was excited because AL-Ahli won the match.

6-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

- Tour guide : I will tell you some facts about the great pyramid ?
Tourist : Sorry -----but when will we come back .
Tour guide : At four o'clock. I was talking about the great pyramid.

7-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ayman : ----- ?
Noor : I bought a shirt and a jacket yesterday .

8-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Tour guide : It was very green here then . It rained a lot. Now it doesn't rain very often. Now I will tell you about the rooms
Tourist : I'm -----but did the king live in the castle?
Tour guide : Yes , He did, Ok, I was talking about the rooms .
Tourist : Excuse me -----? When did the Romans live here?
Tour guide : It was around 30 BCE.

- 1- Guide : Salah al-Din built the Citadel to protect Cairo.
Tourist : Excuse me -----? When did he built it?
Guide : He began in 1176.
2- Sameh : My favourite hobby is reading books.
Huda : I'm sorry to interrupt. -----?
Sameh : In a library near my house.

Important Paragraphs

موضوعات تعبير هام

القلاع The Citadel

Salah al-Din built it . He built it to protect Cairo , It took eight years to complete . There are four museum in it . It is great .
صلاح الدين بناها . وهو بناها لكي يحمي القاهرة . هي أخذت 8 سنوات لكي تكتمل . ويوجد 4 متاحف فيها . هي عظيمة .

قصر المنتزه The Muntazah palace

The Muntazah palace is by the sea in Alexandria. King Abbas II built it to him self in 1892 . It has two towers and high walls around it on three sides. The other side faces the sea . you can't go inside the building now , but you can visit the beautiful gardens .

قصر المنتزه مظل على البحر في الاسكندرية . الملك عباس الثاني بناه لنفسه في 1892 . القصر يمتلك برجان وجدران عاليه حوله في ثلاث جوانب والجانب الرابع مظل على البحر . أنت لا تستطيع ان تدخله الآن . لكن يمكنك زيارة الحدائق الجميله .

المنازل The lighthouse

The Lighthouse was built in Alexandria . It was built in about 283 BCE. It was built at the time of king Ptolemy . A lot of tourists like visiting it . The lighthouse stood on a small island . Many earthquakes damaged it .

المنازل بنيت في الاسكندرية . هي بنيت في حوالي سنة 283 قبل الميلاد . هي بنيت في عصر الملك بطليموس . الكثير من السائحين يحبون زيارتها . والمنازل تقف على جزيرة صغيره . والكثير من الزلازل أتلفوهم .

The places of interest tourists like to visit in Cairo الأماكن يحب زيارتها السائحون في القاهرة
Tourists like visiting many places in Cairo . There are many historical places in Cairo . The Egyptian Museum is an important place to visit . They can enjoy watching the history of Egypt , Cairo Tower, also , is a beautiful place . Tourists visit it to enjoy the beautiful view of Cairo and the Nile .
 السائحون يحبون زيارة الكثير من الأماكن في القاهرة . يوجد الكثير من الأماكن التاريخية في القاهرة . المتحف المصري مكان هام للزيارة . السائحون يستمتعون بمشاهدة تاريخ مصر . وبرج القاهرة أيضا مكان جميل . السائحون يزوروه لكي يستمتعوا بالمنظر الجميل للقاهرة والنيل .

حصن قيتباي Fort Qaitbey

Fort Qaitbey stands on a small island near Alexandria . It was built by Sultan Qaitbey in 1480 . Tourists can go into the fort , From it's walls , you get a beautiful view of the sea . there is also a small museum in the fort . It is fantastic place to visit .

حصن قيتباي شيد على جزيرة صغيرة بالقرب من الاسكندرية . هو بنى بواسطة السلطان قيتباي في 1480 . السائحون يستطيعوا أن يدخلوا الحصن . ومن خلال جدرانه تستطيع أن ترى المنظر الجميل للبحر . ويوجد أيضا متحف صغير في الحصن . فهو مكان رائع للزيارة .

UNIT THREE AT THE WEEKEND

LESSONS (1-2)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Week end	نهاية الاسبوع	journey	رحله طويله	relatives	أقارب
Parents	والدين	Site	موقع	picnic	نزهه خلويه
Cousin	ابى عم	really	حقا	tired	متعب
excited	مثار / منفعل	present situation	حالى موقف	ticket	تذكره
sweatshirt	سويت تشيرت	hope	يتمنى	Crash	يصطدم
plan	خطه - يخطط	live	يعيش	party	حفله
sure	متأكد	flying cars	سيارات طائره	fun	متعه - مرح
enjoy	يستمتع	prediction	تنبؤ	cloud	سحابه
The sky	السماء	activities	أنشطه	ancient	قديم - عتيق
project	مشروع	the countryside	الريف	heavy	ثقيل
come back	يرجع - يعود	shore	شاطيء	boring	ممل

Prepositions

حروف الجر

<i>Go on a long journey</i> يذهب في رحله طويله	<i>Enjoy your weekend</i> استمتع بعطلة نهاية الاسبوع	<i>Get home</i> يصل للمنزل
<i>Stay with relatives</i> يقوم مع الاقارب	<i>On the farm</i> في المزرعه	<i>full of</i> مملوء بـ
<i>Visit an ancient site</i> يزور مكان أثري	<i>work on a project</i> ينجز مشروع	<i>Have a picnic</i> يقوم بنزهه
<i>Do a project about</i> يقوم بعمل مشروع عن	<i>for the first time</i> لأول مره	<i>Thank for</i> يشكر على
<i>Ride a bike</i> يركب دراجه	<i>excited about</i> سعيد - مثار بـ	<i>go to bed</i> يذهب للفراس
<i>Do (activities - project)</i>	<i>at the moment of speaking</i> في لحظه التحدث	<i>Read about</i> يقرأ عن
	<i>win a game</i> يفوز باللعبه	<i>At my uncle's house</i> في بيت عمى
	<i>Visit an ancient site</i> يزور موقع	<i>Give information</i> يعطى معلومات
		<i>Read an e-mail</i> يقرأ ايميل



الكلمة وعكسها

WORD	OPPOSITE	WORD	OPPOSITE
Ancient قديم - عتيق	Modern حديث - عصري	Far بعيد	Near قريب
Heavy ثقيل	Light خفيف	Fast سريع	Slow بطيء
Interesting شيق	Boring ممل	Sure متأكد	Unsure غير متأكد
Happy سعيد	Unhappy غير سعيد	Pleased مسرور	Sad حزين
High عالي	Low منخفض	Popular محبوب	un popular غير محبوب

LANGUAGE NOTES

- (1) Drive + a car يقود سيارة * Drive some one يوصل شخص
EX: I can drive the car. EX: Ali is going to drive me to school.
- (2) On + أيام الأسبوع
EX: I never go to school on Fridays.
- (3) AT + الوقت
EX: The party will start at two o'clock.
- (4) Excited بمعنى مثار وتصف العاقل * Exciting بمعنى مثير وتصف غير العاقل
EX: I'm very excited. EX: The film was very exciting.
- (5) Country بمعنى دولة The country = The countryside بمعنى الريف
EX: Egypt is the most important country in Africa.
EX: She went on a long journey to the country (the countryside).
- (6) Site بمعنى موقع لمكان أثري Website بمعنى موقع على شبكة الانترنت
EX: The Pyramids and the temples are very important sites in Egypt.
EX: Coolkora is my favourite website.

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

Farm مزرعه	Form استماره	Drive يقود	Dive يغوص
Plans خطط	Planes طائرات	Sure متأكد	Shore شاطئ
Site موقع	Sight رؤيه		

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1- We are going to go on a long ----- to the countryside .
a. journey b. site c. project d. plan
- 2- We are going to ----- with my grandparents on their farm .
a. say b. pay c. stay d. lay
- 3- On Saturday , We are going to visit an ancient ----- The temples at Abu Simbel.
a. sight b. night c. site d. light
- 4- We are ----- A picnic this weekend. Do you want to come ?
a. taking b. doing c. going d. having
- 5- Do you have any ----- For the weekend ?
a. likes b. plans c. kites d. planes
- 6- My grandparents often ----- ancient sites .
a. stay b. visit c. do d. Make



- 7- How often do you ----- a long journey .
a. go on b. have c. go to d. do
- 8- I'm ----- aproject about the Maidum pyramid
a. making b. having c. writing d. doing
- 9- ,, ----- ,, very old .
a. Modern b. Bad c. Ancient d. New
- 10- My uncle's aunt and cousin are my -----
a. relatives b. parents c. grandparents d. grandchildren
- 11- Tourists from all over the world come to Egypt to visit its ancient -----
a. projects b. spaces c. sites d. sides
- 12- All my friends will have a ----- next month .
a. panic b. picnic c. view d. site
- 13- Last week, I had a nice ----- to Aswan on the Nile .
a. flight b. journey c. walk d. holiday
- 14- My grand father like living in the ----- because he loves nature. .
a. countryside b. city c. town d. sea
- 15- I asked my pen friend to ----- me some photos .
a. visit b. see c. play d. send
- 16- I'm very excited ----- the next weekend.
a. on b. at c. about d. in
- 17- Mr Magdi hopes all his students ----- themselves on the holiday .
a. fight b. complete c. hate d. enjoy
- 18- My ----- .are my grandmother and grandfather .
a. grandparents b. parents c. children d. grand children
- 19- My friends and I usually meet ----- Fridays .
a. at b. in c. of d. on
- 20- It will be fun to meet tourists ----- the first time.
a. for b. with c. in d. at
- 21- On holidays, I like to have a ----- in Giza zoo with my friends.
a. stay b. sea c. travel d. picnic
- 22- My ----- is on Friday and Saturday .
a. week b. end week c. weekend d. end
- 23- The sphinx is one of the ----- sites in Egypt .
a. modern b. ancient c. new d. bad
- 24- I will be ----- .to meet your friends at the club .
a. fun b. funny c. bad d. badly
- 25- Last year, we ----- on a journey to the countryside .
a. visited b. spent c. went d. worked
- 26- Students at school like to ----- picnic.
a. do b. make c. have d. give
- 27- Don't stay ----- strangers during holidays .
a. on b. about c. for d. with
- 28- My ----- is on Friday and Saturday .
a. week b. end week c. weekend d. end
- 29- I'm going to go to the park next -----.
a. yesterday b. plan c. site d. weekend

- 30- ----- are the people in my family.
a. Teachers b. Relatives c. Farms d. Projects
- 31- We are going to ----- a picnic this weekend.
a. go b. have c. do d. get
- 32- Tourists come to Egypt to visit ancient -----.
a. websites b. sides c. sites d. films
- 33- Tarek lives ----- a farm.
a. in b. on c. from d. to
- 34- Hassan is doing a ----- about a farm.
a. b. project c. field d. crop
- 35- What are your ----- for the future?
a. plans b. planes c. farms d. schools
- 36- I can't ride a bike very well. I am going to -----.
a. sleep b. speak c. ride d. crash

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - My family are going to go at a long journey. (-----)
- 2 - Tomorrow is a holiday. It will be an excited day. (-----)
- 3 - My brother is going to dive us to Aswan. (-----)
- 4 - Next week, We are going to visit an ancient sight. (-----)
- 5 - My father works on a form. (-----)
- 6 - What are your planes for tomorrow? (-----)
- 7 - Can Ali dive a car? (-----)
- 8 - I'm shore he will pass the exam. (-----)
- 9 - Cairo Tower is in an important sight. (-----)
- 10 - My dad's going to visit the pyramids in Thursday. (-----)
- 11 - The match will start on seven oclock. (-----)
- 12 - My dad's going to ride us to the farm. (-----)
- 13 - It's fun to see the museum with the first time. (-----)
- 14 - We are going to give the train to Luxor next week. (-----)
- 15 - Hamdi will be in the Olympic Sports one day. (-----)
- 16 - The sky is full of dark clouds. It is going to play. (-----)

GRAMMER

The future المستقبل

(كلماته: - تاريخ في المستقبل - In the future - Tomorrow - Next)

Future forms : -

أشكال المستقبل

- (1) Subject + Will + inf المصدر + will + الفاعل (1)
EX: Tomorrow, He will read the story. EX: Tomorrow, He will study English.
- (2) Subject + V.TO BE + GOING TO + المصدر
المصدر + (am - is - are) + going to + الفاعل (2)
• EX: Tomorrow, He is going to read the story.
• EX: Tomorrow, I'm going to write the letter in English.

• عند النفي نضع كلمة not بعد (will or am - is - are)
 EX: He will not play football tomorrow .
 EX: She won't cook the food . EX: He isn't go out tomorrow .

• عند السؤال نستخدم
 (1) WILL + Subject + inf? or will + المصدر + الفاعل?
 (2) am - is - are + المصدر + going to + المصدر?
 EX: Will he travel to Aswan ? EX: Will you study English tomorrow ?
 EX: Are you going to play the match ?
 EX: Is he going to watch TV ?

لاحظ الفرق بين :-

Will	تستخدم في الحالات الآتية :-	going to	تستخدم في الحالات الآتية
EX: I'm very hungry, I will have a sandwich .	• عند اتخاذ قرار سريع	EX: We are going to stay with relatives this weekend .	• عند التخطيط المسبق أو النية لعمل شيء أو قرار في المستقبل
EX: The phone is ringing, I will answer it .	• عند التنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل بدون دليل وتأتي معها هذه الكلمات :-	EX: I'm going to go to school Today ,because it it is the weekend.	• عند التنبؤ بدليل :-
EX: I think the weather will be nice.	sure - expect - think - hope -	EX: Look at those black clouds. It is going to rain .	
EX: I'm sure, She will get high marks .	probably - probablye	EX: Ali is playing well. He is going to win the game .	
EX: Will you open the door , please?	• عند طلب شيء :-	EX: Ali is driving too fast , He is going to crash .	
EX: I will help you with your homework.	• عند عرض شيء :-		
EX: Next year , I will be 17 years old.	• عند ذكر حقيقة مستقبلية :-		

1 Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d

- 1-I can't ride a bike very well . I
 a. will crash b. am going to crash c. won't crash d. crash
- 2- My father is ready. I think he to work .
 a. goes b. will go c. am going to go d. am not going to go
- 3- I To school today, because it's the weekend.
 a. will go b. won't go c. am not going to go d. am going to go
- 4- You going to visit your relatives ?
 a. Do b. Will c. Are d. Did
- 5- When You come tomorrow ?
 a. are b. will c. do d. did
- 6-The sky is full of clouds . It
 a. will rain b. is going to rain c. rains d. won't rain
- 7- I think it hot tomorrow .
 a. will be b. is going to be c. is d. goes to be



- 8- ----- you come to tomorrow's party ?
a. Will b. Have c. Are d. Did
- 9- I think he ----- his sweatshirt .
a. will wear b. would wear c. is going to wear d. was going to wear
- 10- I ----- to Alexandria next summer. It's my plan .
a. will travel b. would travel c. 'm going to travel d. 'm travelling
- 11- I ----- to the park with my parents at weekend, Do you want to come ?
a. am going to go b. go c. will go d. going
- 12- Can anyone help me carry this heavy bag? Yes, of course I ----- you .
a. will help b. helped c. help d. am going to help
- 13- Do you think there ----- flying cars in the future ?
a. are b. were c. will be d. is going to be
- 14- ----- your friend in England send you an e-mail next week ?
a. Is b. Will c. DO d. Did
- 15- We ----- to take the train to Aswan next week, We have our tickets already .
a. will b. are c. going d. are going
- 16- Salma decided to learn French, she ----- a course .
a. will take b. is taking c. had taken d. is going to take
- 17- Hamdi is very fast , I think he ----- be in the Olympic Games one day .
a. will b. is c. is going d. is going to
- 18- Look, Noha, That man is driving too fast. He ----- to crash .
a. is going b. will c. is d. has been
- 19- She is going to ----- her uncle's farm at the weekend .
a. visit b. visited c. visits d. visiting
- 20- This shirt is very nice . I ----- buy it.
a. am going b. will c. won't d. am going to
- 21- I'm not very hungry. I think I ----- have a salad .
a. will b. going to c. am d. am going to
- 22- Hassan ----- play football soon, The game starts in ten minutes .
a. is b. Is going to c. will d. was
- 23- It's six a.m. and it's already 30 c. It ----- be very hot today.
a. will b. are going to c. is going to d. going to
- 24- We ----- to take the train to Luxor next week. We already have our tickets.
a. are going b. won't c. will d. aren't going
- 25- Hamdi is very fast. I think he ----- be in the Olympic Games one day .
a. won't b. is going to c. going to d. will
- 26- it isn't very hot today. I think ----- wear my sweatshirt to the park .
a. am going to b. will c. have d. going to
- 27- I can't ride a bike very well. Oh , no i ----- crash .
a. will b. won't c. going to d. am going to
- 28- I ----- help you carry this heavy box.
a. will to b. going c. am going to d. will
- 29- look at the sky , it is full of dark clouds. It ----- rain soon .
a. won't b. will c. is going d. is going to
- 30- We ----- visit the Egyptian Museum tomorrow. We have bought the tickets.
a. will b. won't c. are going d. are going to



- 31- I'm not hungry . I think ----- have a salad.
a. will not b. going to c. am going to d. will
- 32-What are you going to do at the ----- ?
a. winter b. weekend c. spring d. autumn
- 33- Life in the ----- is slower than life in the city
a. school b. factory c. journey d. countryside
- 34- We had a / an ----- by the river yesterday .
a. picnic b. temple c. email d. ticket
- 35- I always stay with my ----- at weekends .
a. thieves b. relatives c. farmers d. carpenters
- 36- Next weekend , We ----- have lunch at a famous restaurant .
a. will b. won't c. are going d. are going to
- 37- We need some eggs, " I ----- go to the shops and get some.
a. will not b. is going t c. am going to d. will
- 38- Hassan ----- play football soon . The game starts in ten minutes .
a. is going b. will c. is going to d. are going to

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1-My grandparents often stay with ancient sites. (-----)
- 2-I am going to travel to London by plan tomorrow. (-----)
- 3-Next Friday is going to be an excited day. (-----)
- 4-This place is a wonderful website for a lot of money. (-----)
- 5-I expected he is going to make a lot of money. . (-----)
- 6-It's cloudy . it will rain . (-----)
- 7-Perhaps he is going to win the match . . (-----)
- 1 - It is very cold , I am going to close the window . (-----)
- 2 - The party will starts at two o'clock . (-----)
- 3 - I'm going visit my uncle next weekend . (-----)
- 4 - I'm tired , I think , I am going to go to bed now . (-----)
- 5 - I am going to travelling to America . (-----)
- 6 - Nancy will going to visit the zoo tomorrow. (-----)
- 7-I am sure ,Ali will win the game. He is too tired . (-----)
- 8-Are you come tomorrow? (-----)
- 9-He is go to visit his uncle next week. (-----)
- 10-When are you come back home? (-----)
- 11-Are you going to visiting your uncle? (-----)

www.khawajah.blogspot.com



مدونة خواجه

ترحب بكم

وتتمنى لكم أحلى الأوقات

كل عام وأنتم بخير

LESSONS (3-4)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
fossil	حفريه	message	رساله	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
whale	حوت	bones	عظام	protect	يحمي
sound	صوت شيء	moment	لحظه	phone	يتصل
probably	من المحتمل	lines	خطوط	arrangements	ترتيبات
area	منطقه	decide	يقرر	watch a DVD	يشاهد على اسطوانه
coast	ساحل	natural	طبيعي	count	يحسب
desert road	طريق صحراوي	UNESCO	منظمة يونيسكو	walk	يمشي
sea animal	حيوان بحري	Look after	يعتني بـ	desert	صحراء
wadi al-Hitan	وادي الحيتان	western	غربي	Busy	مشغول
conversation	محادثه	nature	طبيعه		

تعابيرات وحروف جر هامه

Listen to	يُنصت الى	On the phone	في التليفون	Go to the park with	يذهب الى الحديقته مع
ask for	يطلب	work on a project	يعمل في	In / at the park	في الحديقته
Call back	يعاود الاتصال	Stay at	يبقى في	Visitor to	زائر الى
Come to	يأتي الى	speak to	يتحدث مع	around the world	حول العالم
through the desert	خلال الصحراء	Look after	يعتني بـ	take along walk	يمشي لفته
Sounds fun	صوت يبدو ممتعا	Take a message	يأخذ رساله	At that time	في ذلك الوقت
		See you then	أراك حينئذ	Just a moment	انتظر لحظه
		see you later	أراك لاحقا		

تصرفات أفعال هامه في الوحدة

speak - spoke - spoken	يتحدث	Leave - left - left	يترك - يغادر
ring - rang - rung	يُنق	find - found - found	يجد

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

bones	عظام	beans	فول	lines	خطوط	lions	أسود
coast	ساحل	Cost	يكلف	walk	تمشي	wake	يوقظ

LANGAUGE NOTES

(Sound n - v)

بمعنى صوت شيء أو يبدو من صوته

• sound (n)

صوت

EX:- I can hear a strange sound .

• sound (v)

يبدو

EX:- That sound is fun .

(البصر sight - موقع Site)

Site

موقع

EX:-Wadi Al-Hitan is a very important natural site.

Sight

البصر

EX:- I saved the animals from the flood.

EX:- He has got a very strong sight , He can see well .

(decide)

Decide To + المصدر

بمعنى يقرر أن

EX:-He decided to travel abroad .

EX: UNESCO decided to protect Wadi al- Hitan

(فاعل + فعل) Decide + that

EX:- UNESCO decided that Wadi al- Hitan should be protected ..

EX:- The plane landed at 5 o'clock .

(Go + v + ing)

EX :- He went shopping

EX :- She goes swimming .

(take message – receive message)

• take a message

بمعنى ياخذ رساله ليعطيها لشخص ما

EX :- I will take the message to post it.

• Receive a message

بمعنى يتلقى ويتسلم رساله

EX: I received a message from Ahmed yesterday .

المصدر + to + صفه + TOO

بمعنى أكثر من اللازم وتحمل معنى النفي وتدل على ان الفاعل لا يستطيع القيام بالفعل.

EX:- Desert roads were too difficult to drive on .

المصدر + Start to

Start + v + ing

EX- He started to study English .

EX- She started cooking the food.

المصدر + to + صفه + It's

EX- It's dangerous to to smoke .

EX- It's important to protect places like Wadi al - Hitan .

كلمات وتعريفاتها

Fossil حفريه

Hard remains of an animal or plant lived many years ago.
الحفريات هي بقايا صلبه لحيوان أو نبات عاشوا منذ سنوات عديده.

Message

رساله

Information that you say or write to another person .
الرساله هي المعلومات التي تقولها أو تكتبها لشخص آخر .

Skeleton هيكل

All the bones inside an animal or person .
الهيكل العظمى هو العظام داخل الحيوان أو الانسان .

Whale

الحوت

A very large sea animal . . كبير
Is abbreviation of United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization .

UNESCO

منظمة اليونسكو

It is a large area in the western Desert where there are many whale bones, skeleton and fossils .

Wadi al-

Hitan

وادي الحيتان منطقه واسعه في الصحراء الغربيه حيث يوجد الكثير من عظام والهيكل العظميه للحيتان .



1 Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d

- 1- A ----- is information that you say or write to another person.
a. fossil b. message c. skeleton d. whale
- 2- A ----- is all the bones inside an animal or person .
a. fossil b. skeleton c. rock d. project
- 3- Wadi Al-Hitan is a large ----- In the western Desert .
a. city b. village c. area d. rock
- 4- A ----- is a very large sea animal .
a. snake b. lion c. tiger d. whale
- 5- A ----- is a rock which was an animal or plant many years ago .
a. message b. fossil c. skeleton d. whale
- 6- Let's ----- a DVD tonight.
a. wash b. watch c. do d. give
- 7- The phone is ringing . I will ----- it .
a. do b. make c. answer d. ask
- 8- In 1902, there were not many visitors ----- Wadi Al-Hitan.
a. in b. on c. at d. to
- 9- We saw a ----- . of a big fish in the museum last week .
a. fossil b. message c. project d. whale
- 10- In the science lesson today, the children counted the bones in the ----- of a sheep.
a. wool b. hair c. skeleton d. eyes
- 11- the blue ----- is the largest animal in the world .
a. whale b. message c. shark d. fossil
- 12- There is a ----- from Ali, He would like you to call him .
a. sound b. message c. book d. phone
- 13- Hello, Is Hazem ----- , please ?
a. three b. there c. her d. their
- 14- May I speak ----- Reem, please?
a. in b. on c. at d. to
- 15- When will Mona be -----
a. house b. home c. room d. villa
- 16- Hi, Soha, Thank you for calling -----
a. back b. forward c. up d. down
- 17- I am sorry you are ill, I am sure you will ----- feel better soon.
a. fail b. fell c. fall d. feel
- 18- When is Salma going to ----- .Hala .
a. meat b. eat c. meet d. buy
- 19- Tarek is going to go ----- a journey and stay with relatives .
a. on b. in c. to d. at
- 20- In 2005 , UNESCO decided that Wadi al-Hitan should be -----
a. damaged b. bought c. protected d. dive
- 21- We saw a ----- of a big fish in the museum last week .
a. tail b. fossil c. rope d. fin
- 22- There is a ----- from Ali, He would like you to call him.
a. newspaper b. writing c. text d. message



- 23- In the science lesson today, the children counted the bones in the ----- of a sheep.
a. skeleton b. lungs c. stomach d. eyes
- 24- The----- in the dinosaur's skeleton are very strong.
a. tongue b. bones c. meat d. tooth
- 25- Wadi al-Hitan is a very important ----- site.
a. natural b. difficult c. dangerous d. coastal
- 26- UNESCO looks ----- the world's most important places.
a. for b. up c. after d. at
- 27- „Message „is ----- that you say or write to another person.
a. language b. information c. country d. nationality
- 28- Jurassic Coast is a / an----- in the south of England.
a. capital b. area c. country d. countryside
- 29- ----- roads are too difficult to drive on .
a. New b. Modern c. Wide d. Desert
- 30- The----- is all the bones inside an animal or person .
a. skeleton b. leg c. back d. neck
- 31- For three years, I have been ----- on a project about sea animals .
a. making b. working c. taking d. picking
- 32- A/An ----- is information that you say or write to another person.
a. message b. skeleton c. arrangement d. sound
- 33- I ----- my friend, samy, but he didn't answer.
a. spoke b. talked c. called d. said
- 34- Adam can ----- up to ten now .
a. count b. stop c. decide d. protect
- 35- A ----- is a very large sea animal .
a. whale b. lion c. monkey d. fox
- 36- In the science lesson today, The children counted the bones in the ----- of a sheep
a. skeleton b. wool c. meat d. rock
- 37- ----- looks after the world's most important places .
a. Government b. Skeleton c. language d. UNESCO
- 38- people first found the ----- and fossils in Wadi al-Hitan in 1902 .
a. bones b. tails c. visitors d. news
- 39- We saw a ----- of a big fish in the museum last week .
a. food b. message c. fossil d. moment
- 40- All bones inside an animal or person is the -----
a. fossil b. skeleton c. whale d. message
- 41- There is a ----- from ali. He would like you to call him .
a. message b. corridor c. playground d. rock
- 42- Hagar can now ----- from one to twenty .
a. speak b. decide c. ride d. count
- 43- Mothers look ----- their children .
a. before b. after c. in d. at
- 44- He was injured on a building ----- .
a. website b. site c. picnic d. plan
- 45- I left a / an ----- on her answering machine .
a. book b. chair c. email d. message



- 46- This cream helps to ----- your skin against the sun .
a. make b. protect c. visit d. drive
- 47- The bus ----- from London to Athens took 60 hours .
a. picnic b. museum c. journey d. plan
- 48- Perhaps, I ----- go back at 7 o'clock in the evening .
a. going b. will c. going to d. am going to

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - Wadi al-Hitan is a very important natural sight . (-----)
- 2 - UNESCO decided that protect Wadi al-Hitan (-----).
- 3 - I am going to go swim with my friends . (-----)
- 4 - How often do you meet your friends on the weekend? (-----)
- 5 - Wadi al-Hitan is a very important nature site. (-----)
- 6 - By the 1980s, people could drive more easily throw the desert (-----)
- 7 - In winter, I wear a jacket to project me from cold . (-----)
- 8 - What are you going to do in Saturday? (-----)
- 9 - The opposite of her is there . (-----)
- 10 - I will probable stay at home and read my book . (-----)
- 11 - My I speak to Samy, Please (-----)
- 12 - It will be fun to meet my realatives at the first time (-----)
- 13 - The Jurassic cost is an area in th south of England (-----)
- 14 - UNESCO looks at the world's most important places. (-----)
- 15 - The blue lion is the largest animal in the world. (-----)
- 16 - Unnatural fruit is good for our health . (-----)
- 17 - Sunglasses connect our eyes from the sun. (-----)
- 18 - I decided to I am going to join the football team. (-----)
- 19 - It's so cold to get out . (-----)
- 20 - A skeleton is a very large sea animal. (-----)
- 21 - I think , I am going to wear my sweatshirt to the park . (-----)

عمل ترتيبات في التليفون

- عند الرد على مكالمة التليفون يمكن أن تقول :-
- 1 - مرحبا على يتحدث .
- 2 - من فضلك من المتحدث .
- عندما تصل بشخص يمكن أن تبدأ المكالمة كالتالي :-
- 3 - هذه انا ناديه .
- 4 - هل فاتن موجوده ؟
- 5 - هل يكتنى المتحدث مع فاتن ؟
- 6 - نعم انتظري لحظه من فضلك .
- 7 - آسف لا . فاتن ليست موجوده الان و هل يمكننى أخذ رساله لها ؟
- 8 - هل يمكن ان تتطلى من فاتن ان تتصل ؟
- عندما يتصل بك صديقك حين يعود نستخدم :-
- 9 - شكرا لمعاودة الاتصال.
- Hello, (Ali) speaking .
- Who's speaking , please ?
- This is (Nadia) .
- Is (Faten) there, please ?
- May I speak to (Faten) , please ?
- Yes, just a moment , please .
- No , I am sorry (Faten) isn't here at the moment. Can I take a message ?
- Can you ask (Faten) to phone me , please ?
- Thank you for calling back .

1 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Adel wants to speak to Ayman on the phone
 Adel : Hello , Adel is speaking. Is Ayman here, please ?
 Ashraf : Sorry, He isn't here at the
 Adel : Whenhe come home ?
 Ashraf :10 p.m .
 Adel : Can heme when he comes back?
 Ashraf : Of course .

2 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Ali is asking about Kareem's father's job.
 Kareem : My father's job as a farmer is very tiring.
 Ali : What does he?
 Kareem : Heanimals.
 Ali :does he work?
 Kareem : he works..... A farm.
 Ali : I wish to visit him soon .

3 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Walid and Mohamed are talking about the weekend.
 Walid : Where will you spend your next weekend ?
 Mohamed :the club.
 Walid : Will you go with your?
 Mohamed : Yes, We have planned that
 Walid :are you meeting ?
 Mohamedweek .

www.khawagah.blogspot.com



مدونة خواجه

4 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

A telephone conversation between Adel and Mr. Badrawi
 Adel : Hello, Mr.I speak to Emad ?
 Badrawi :is speaking , please?
 Adel : This is Adel .
 Badrawi : I am sorry, Emad isn'tat the moment. Can I take a message?
 Adel : Yes, please. Can youhim to phone me when he comes home?
 Badrawi : Of course .

5 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Omar meets a tourist .
 Omar : Hello.are you from ?
 Tourist : I am from Africa.
 Omar : How longyou stay in Egypt ?
 Tourist : I will stay for
 Omar : What will you visit in Egypt.
 Tourist : I will visit thein Giza.



6 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Youssef wants to talk to Hazem on the phone

Youssef : Hello, is Hazem there , please?

Hazem : I am sorry Hazem isn't here at the moment. Who is speaking?

Youssef : It's Youssef.

Hazem : Hello, Youssef, Can I -----a messag?

Youssef : Yes, Can you ask Hazem to -----me please ?

Hazem : of course, I think he will be -----at about four o'clock .

1-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Huda : Hello, Mrs Sabri . Is there Aya , please ?

Mrs Sabri : -----.

Huda : When will she be home ?

Mrs Sabri : I think she will be home at about half past five .

2-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Huda : Hi Alaa. Thank you for callin g back. What are you going to do on Saturday ?

Alaa : -----.

3-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ali : Hello, Ali is speaking .

Toka : Hello Ali. This is Toka . May I-----?

Ali : Yes, just a moment, please. Huda, Toka wants to talk to you

4-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Mrs Eman : I am sorry, Mona isn't here at the moment .

Hadeer : When will she come ?

Mrs Eman : I think she will be home at about half past five-----?

Hadeer : Yes, can you ask her to phone me , please ?

5-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ali : Hello, May I speak to Hossam, please ?

Basim : -----.

6-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Aya : Sorry , Mai isn't here .

Soha : -----?

Aya : I think she will be home at five .

7-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Adel : Can you help me carry this heavy box?

Shahd : -----.

Adel : Thank you for your help .

8-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Huda : -----?

Leen : Yes, I think there will be flying cars in the future .

Huda : I hope so ..

9-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Samer : Will you wash the dishes , please ?

Nada :

10-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

John :

Lili : Yes , just a moment , please .

John : Hi Samy . I am happy to hear your voice .

11-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Wael :

Asmaa : No, I'm sorry . Salma isn't here at the moment .

Wael : Ok . Thank you . .

12-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Salwa : Hello . Salwa speaking . Can I speak to Lamiaa ?

Asmaa :

Salwa : Ok . Thank you . I will call her back again .

موضوعات هامة

The next weekend

اجازة نهاية الاسبوع

We are going to visit our grandparents on the farm . My dad is going to drive us , We are going to meet our relatives . We are going to play games . I think we will enjoy ourselves .

نحن سوف نزور أجدادنا في المزرعة ز ابي سوف يوصلنا بالسيارة . نحن سوف نقابل أقاربنا . نحن سوف نلعب الألعاب . انا اعتقد اننا سوف نستمتع .

Wadi al-Hitan

وادي الحيتان

Wadi al-Hitan is a large area in the Western Desert. It is a very important natural site. There are many whale bones, skeleton and fossil there , the fossil are 40-50 million years old. In 2005 , UNESCO decided that it should be protected .

وادي الحيتان منطقه واسعه في الصحراء الغربيه . انها موقع طبيعي هام جدا . يوجد الكثير من عظام الحيتان والهيكل العظمي والحفريات هناك . والحفريات من 40 الى 50 سنه . في عام 2005 منظمة اليونسكو قررت ان وادي الحيتان يجب ان يحمى .

A day you spent on your uncle's farm

يوم قضيت في مزرعة عمك

Last week, I went to my uncle's farm in Fayoum. I spent a nice day with my cousins . we played and enjoyed the fine weather in fields. My uncle keeps many animals . I helped him feeding these animals . I was very happy and enjoyed a lot .

الاسبوع الماضي . ذهبت الى مزرعة عمي في الفيوم . قضيت وقتا لطيفا مع اولاد عمي . لعبنا وتمتعنا بالطقس الجميل في الحقول . يربي عمي الكثير من الحيوانات . أساعده في إطعام هذه الحيوانات وانا كنت سعيدا جدا وتمتعت كثيرا جدا هناك .

مكان شيق An interesting place

Egypt has many interesting places to visit . The pyramids in Giza is my favourite one . A lot of tourists come to see it . The Pyramids were built thousands of years ago . They were built to bury their kings . The Great pyramid is 137m high .

تتمتع مصر بالكثير من الأماكن الشيقة والتي يمكن أن تزورها . الأهرامات فى الجيزة هى المفضلة . الكثير من السائحين يأتون لى يروها . وبنيت الأهرامات من آلاف السنين . وبنيت الأهرامات لى يدفنوا ملوكهم الهرم الأكبر ارتفاعه حوالى 138 متر .

- Write an e-mail of six (6) sentences on: -

To your friend Habiba telling her the job you want to do in the futyre , Your name is Mona

A writing an e-mail كتابة البريد الالكتروني

Model Answer

TO : البريد الالكتروني للمرسل اليه	TO : Habiba
FROM : أسم المرسل أو بريده الالكتروني	FROM : Toka
ABOUT : عنوان البريد الالكتروني	ABOUT : My job in the future
DEAR : أسم المرسل إليه	Dear Habiba,
الموضوع	Do you think about your job in the future? I want to be a doctor. My father helps me to study well . I want to have a big hospital . I will help poor people . Dr Magdy Yaquoub is my hero .
Best wishes	Best wishes
أسم المرسل	Toka

UNIT Four SPORTS

LESSONS (1-2)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
stadium	استاد	team	فريق	final	نهائى
international	الدولى	swimming	سباحه	diving	غوص
nations	أمم	pool	حمام	coast	ساحل
Lvory coast	ساحل العاج	squash	الاسكواش	kaeate	كاراتيه
competition	منافسه	horse	خيل	hockey	هوكى
Morocco	دولة المغرب	riding	ركوب	basketball	كرة السله
Tunisia	دولة تونس	tennis	تنس	seats	مقاعد
Kenya	كينيا	table	طاولة	goal	هدف مرمى
India	الهند	airport	مطار	keeper	حارس
Kolkata	مدينة كولكاتا	volleyball	كره طائره	northeast	شمال شرق
Nasr City	مدينة نصر	include	يشمل - يتضمن	spaces	فراغات
country	الدوله	Egypt	مصر	how far	ما البعد
recent	حالى - حديث	Egyptian	مصرى	friendly	ودود - عطوف
jumper	يلوفر	club	نادى	world cup	كأس العالم
famous	مشهور	winner	فائز	win	يفوز
tour guide	مرشد سياحى	spices	توابل	lose	يخسر - يفقد

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Know about all over Africa Onsports day Take around A 50-metre swimming pool	يعرف عن في كل أنحاء في اليوم الرياضي يأخذ شخص حمام سباحة طوله 50 مترا	The home of for the fifth time At the sports club Do sport Talk about For lunch for +	موطن ل للمرة الخامسة في نادي رياضي يمارس رياضة يتحدث عن على الغداء الوجبات (الفطار - الغداء)	In the northeast of Cairo From around the world Answer to Agree to agree with	في شمال شرق القاهرة من كل أنحاء العالم أجابه ل يوافق على شيء يتفق مع شخص
--	---	---	--	---	--

تصريفات هامة

Win - won - won Teach - taught - taught Tell - told - told Make - made - made Know - knew - known Swim - swam - swum Bear - bore - born Show - showed - showed	يفوز يدرس يخبر يصنع - يجعل يعرف يسبح يلد يظهر - يبين	Beautiful X ugly Different X The same Teach X learn Win X lose friendly X unfriendly Go X come Thirsty X hungry	جميل X قبيح نفس X مختلف يدرس X يتعلم يفوز X يخسر ودود X غير ودود يأتي X يذهب جوعان X عطشان
---	---	---	--

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

Space	مقاعد	Sit	يجلس
-------	-------	-----	------

General Notes

(stadium - playground - pitch)

stadium

EX:-Cairo internatonal stadium is in Nasr City.

Playground

EX:- The school playground was well- arranged.

Pitch

EX:- The football pitch was bad, so the team lost 2 to zero .

(Win - Earn)

Win

بمعنى يفوز بمباراة - لعبه - جائزه - مسابقة

EX:- Egypt won the African Cup of nations ror the fifth time.

EX:- Ahmed won the match last week .

Earn

EX:- He earns about 50000 pounds a year .

بمعنى يكسب مال

50- metre swimming pool حمام سباحة طوله 50 متر

EX:- There is a 50- metre swimming pool in Cairo International Stadium .

لم نضع (s) لكلمة metre لأن الطول هنا صفة تصف حمام السباحة و لا يمكن جمع الصفة .

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- The World Cup is a football-----between countries from around the world .
a) competition b) match c) stadium d) team
- There are usually six people in a volleyball -----
a) class b) team c) cup d) final



- 3-Let's go to the swimming ----- This afternoon, I love swimming .
a) lake b) pool c) sea d) river
- 4- Hassan is playing in the tennis ----- at the sports club today
a) team b) space c) stadium d) pool
- 5- The stadium has 75,000 ----- for people who want to watch sports. .
a) chairs b) tables c) seats d) cupboards
- 6- Cairo International ----- is the home of Egyptian football .
a. Museum b.pyramid c.Stadium d.Tower
- 7- There is also a ----- where you can watch horse riding.
a. stadium b. clinic c.diving pool d. swimming pool
- 8- Diving , hockey and horse riding are ----- .
a. subjects b. sports c.machines d. foods
- 9- Hassan is playing in the tennis ----- . at the sports club today .
a. group b. final c.collection d. pair
- 10- The World Cup is a football----- between countries from all around the world
a. game b. match c.competition d. playing
- 11- 120,000 people can watch sports at a ----- in Kolkata, India.
a. stadium b. club c.playground d. gym
- 12- There are usually six people in a volleyball -----
a. match b. group c.team d. herd
- 13-Let's go to the swimming----- this afternoon. I like swimming .
a. pond b. pool c.ocean d. sea
- 14-Football is my favourite ----- .
a. food b. match c.sport d. subject
- 15- Cairo stadium has 75,000----- for people who want to watch sports .
a. chairs b. desks c.seats d. sofas
- 16- Cairo ----- stadium is in Nasr City .
a. Local b. National c.Global d. international
- 17-My father likes to watch ----- .
a. horse b. horse riding c.riding horse d. ride horse
- 18- she likes ----- ..in the sea at sharm El Sheikh .
a. diving b. riding c.reading d. driving
- 19-Sinai is in the----- of Egypt .
a. south b. north c.northeast d. northwest
- 20- We will play final match and see who will win the -----
a. sport b. competition c.play d. composition
- 21- There's a 50-metre swimming ----- in the Cairo international stadium .
a. pool b. ball c.mall d. suit
- 22- How----- is it from the stadium to the airport? - 10 kilometres .
a. much b. tall c.many d. far
- 23- our English book this term ----- 9 units.
a. consists b. has c.gets d. takes
- 24- There are 30 ----- for students in this class to sit on .
a. sits b. spaces c.seats d. mats
- 25- Egypt won the African Cup of Nations for the ----- time.
a. five b. fifth c.fifteen d. fifty



- 26- Alexandria is on the north ----- of Egypt .
a. cost b. coast c. canal d. channal
- 27- There are spaces in Cairo Stadium which are used ----- other sports .
a. in b. about c. for d. by
- 28- You can swim in the ----- pool .
a. swim b. swimming c. swam d. swims
- 29- A ----- is a sport you can practice with a ball.
a. horse riding b. diving c. swimming d. hockey
- 30- You can watch football at Cairo. International -----
a. Opera b. Cinema c. Station d. Stadium
- 31- how ----- is it from the stadium to the airport .
a. much b. far c. high d. heavy
- 32- My teacher are nice and -----.
a. first b. final c. friendly d. lost
- 33- The stadium has ----- which are used for other sports .
a. spaces b. fields c. floors d. roads
- 34- There are usually six people in a volleyball ----- .
a. group b. team c. class d. competition
- 35- Let's go to the swimming ----- this afternoon .I love swimming .
a. stadium b. bowl c. pool d. glasses
- 36- Ali likes ----- stories in his free time .
a. write b. to write c. writes d. writing
- 37- It isn't good to play a lot of ----- in one time .
a. sports b. spaces c. nations d. cups
- 38- Egypt won the African Cup of ----- six times .
a. countries b. nations c. world d. cities
- 39- The team trained well ; I think they will ----- the competition .
a. miss b. make c. win d. lose
- 40- Three people were killed in the accident ----- a child .
a. including b. includes c. include d. included
- 41- How many ----- does Cairo international Stadium have ?
a. desks b. chairs c. seats d. beds
- 42- The world Cup is a football ----- between countries from all around the world .
a. stadium b. team c. sport d. competition
- 43- ----- is played without a ball .
a. Squash b. Hockey c. Karate d. Tennis
- 44- That's the ----- club where my brother plays basketball
a. sports b. sport c. sporty d. sport's

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - Our national football group is going to play a match against Nigerea tomorrow . (-----)
- 2 - My brother likes horse diving very much . (-----)
- 3 - Nader and Ayman like to play desk tennis once every week (-----)
- 4 - There is a 50-metre swimming hole in Cairo stadium (-----)
- 5 - Egypt won the African Cup of Nations in 2006 for the five time (-----)



- 6 - Which sport do you like watch . (-----)
 7 - In 2006, Egypt won the Africa Cup of Nations . (-----)
 8 - Football is a subject which all the Egyptians enjoy. (-----)
 9 - I like horse reading . (-----)
 10- The world Cup is an international competition. (-----)
 11_ How high is it from the stadium to the airport ? (-----)
 12_ Tunisia is an Arab city . (-----)
 13-Please , See me the photos which you took yesterday. (-----)
 14-People from all above the world watch the World Cup matches. (-----)
 15-Tennis is a club which many people enjoy. (-----)
 16-Stadiums usually have spaces for horse driving. (-----)
 17-I enjoy watching Chinese desk tennis . (-----)
 18-I nformation about sports on a net page (-----)
 19-120,000 people can watch sports on a club in Kolkata, India (-----)

Structures

<u>Relatives clauses</u> ضماني الوصل (Who - Which - That - Where)	
Who = That	بمعنى الذى أو التى وتستخدم لتحل محل الاسم العاقل سواء مفرد أو جمع EX:- I met the man who is a doctor .
Which = That	بمعنى الذى أو التى وتستخدم لتحل محل الاسم الغير العاقل سواء مفرد أو جمع EX:- I read the story which / that was boring . بمعنى حيث وتستخدم لتحل محل المكان . EX:- This is the house where we live .
Where	ملاحظات : - (1) إذا وجد حرف جر فى الجملة فأننا نستخدم which محل EX: _ That is the flat which we live . (2) إذا جاء بعد المكان مباشرة فعل بدون فاعل فنستخدم which EX:- We bought a flat which is near the school .

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1- In 2006, this was the place----- football teams played in the African .
 a. Who b. which c. where d. that
 2- There are many spaces ----- are used for other sports .
 a. Who b. which c. where d. that
 3- There is also a stadium ----- You can watch horse riding .
 a. Who b. which c. where d. that
 4- Mr Hamed has a son ----- is a doctor.
 a. Who b. which c. where d. that
 5- What is the name of the book ----- you are reading?
 a. Who b. which c. where d. that
 6- The people ----- live next door are very friendly .
 a. Who b. which c. where d. that
 7- Please show me the photos ----- you took on the sports day.
 a. Who b. which c. where d. that
 8- The stadium has 75,000 seats for people ----- want to watch sports .
 a. Who b. which c. where d. that



- 9- Mr Magdy is the teacher ----- teaches us science .
a. Who b. which c. where d. that
- 10- That's the room----- I study English .
a. Who b. which c. where d. that
- 11- This is the house ----- grandfather lived.
a. Who b. which c. where d. that
- 12- This is the scientist ----- Won the prize.
a. Who b. which c. where d. that
- 13- Football is the game----- I like most .
a. Who b. which c. where d. why
- 14- We bought a flat ----- is near the school .
a. Who b. which c. where d. that
- 15- The zoo is the place ----- we see animals .
a. Who b. which c. where d. that
- 16- The man ----- teaches us social studies is called Mr, Ahmed .
a. Who b. which c. when d. where
- 17- I always thank people ----- help me .
a. Who b. which c. when d. where
- 18- What is the name of the story ----- ..you are reading .
a. Who b. in which c. that d. where
- 19- We bought a flat ----- is near the school .
a. Who b. which c. when d. where
- 20- This is the village ----- my father was born
a. Who b. which c. when d. where
- 21- That is the shop ----- Magda bought her jumper .
a. Who b. which c. when d. where
- 22- These are the exams----- we will take in the summer
a. Who b. that c. which d. where
- 23- Alexandria is the city ----- there is a famous library..
a. Who b. that c. when d. where
- 24- Wimbledon is a place in London----- you can watch tennis every summer.
a. Who b. that c. which d. where
- 25- That is the man ----- lives next to us .
a. Who b. which c. when d. where
- 26- The stadium has 75,000 seats for people ----- want to watch sports .
a. which b. where c. who d. when
- 27- There are many spaces ----- are used for other sports .
a. which b. where c. who d. when
- 28- There is also a stadium ----- you can watch horse riding.
a. which b. where c. who d. when
- 29- this is the village ----- my father was born .
a. that b. where c. who d. when
- 30- football is the sports ----- I like most.
a. which b. where c. who d. when
- 31- Cairo is the city ----- I live .
a. that b. where c. who d. when



- 32- English is the subject ----- I like.
a. which b. where c.who d. when
- 33- The money ----- the thieves stole was not much .
a. which b. where c.who d. when
- 34- I met the player ----- won the cup .
a. which b. where c.who d. when
- 35- What's is the place ----- we can do exercise ?
a. which b. where c.who d. when
- 36- The match ----- I watched yesterday was exciting .
a. that b. where c.who d. when
- 37- tennis is a game ----- many people enjoy .
a. which b. where c.who d. when
- 38- Hamdi is the boy ----- can swim really fast .
a. that b. where c.who d. when
- 39- A good friend is someone ----- always helps you.
a. which b. where c.who d. when
- 40- This is the place ----- I was born .
a. that b. where c.who d. when
- 41- please show me the photos ----- you took on sports day .
a. which b. where c.who d. when
- 42- What's the name of the book ----- you are reading .
a. that b. where c.who d. when
- 43- Mr Nabil Fawzy has a son ----- is a doctor .
a. which b. where c.who d. when
- 44- In 2006, The Stadium was the place ----- football teams played .
a. that b. where c.who d. when

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - This is the pool which I swam for the first time (-----)
- 2 - Hany is the tour guide where will take you around the museum (-----)
- 3 - This is the place who I was born . (-----)
- 4 - Tennis is a game who many people enjoy (-----)
- 5 - Arabic is a language who is spoken in many countries (-----)
- 6 - My uncle is a tour guide which shows people famous places (-----)
- 7 - There is a nearby club which I play tennis . (-----)
- 8 - The tour guide is someone what takes you around the museum (-----)
- 9-We bought a flat who is near the school. (-----)
- 10-The people which live next door are very friendly. (-----)
- 11-That is the shop who Magda bought her jumper. (-----)
- 12-I went to the florist which I bought some flowers. (-----)
- 13-Ali is the singer when I like most . (-----)
- 14-The ruler who you found is mine . (-----)
- 15-Alexandria is the city when there is a famous library. (-----)
- 16-Tamer is a student which I sit beside in the class . (-----)
- 17-That's the sport who my brother plays basketball (-----)

LESSONS (3 - 4)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
centre	مركز	encourage	يشجع	Olympic	اولمبية
don't worry	لا تقلق	similar to	مشابه ل	fun	متعة
change	يغير	amazing	مدهش	arm	زرع
work hard	يعمل بجد	hard-	مجتهد	once	ذات مرة
practise	يمارس - يتدرب	working	مضرب	describe	يصف
correctly	بطريقه صحيحه	racket	يصبح	description	وصف
get tired go	متعب	correct	ينسى	remember	يتذكر
go for a run	يجري	forget	لائق بدنيا	invent	يخترع
grade	درجه	fit	جامعه	player	لاعب
get into	يدخل - ينضم ل	university	مخترع	discover	يكشف
		inventor			

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Don't worry	لا تقلق	That's a long way	انه طريق طويل	Get tired	يصاب بالإرهاق
Come on	تعالى	Have an accident	يصاب في حادثه	Stop trying	يتوقف عن المحاولة
It 'll be fun	سيكون ممتع	Go on	يستمر	Get better	لائق بدنيا
play for	يلعب لصالح	Take turn	يتبادل الانوار	Worried a bout	قلق على
To the end of the road	في نهاية الطريق	Good at	جيد في	Let's do some exercise	هيا نقوم ببعض التمرينات
Go for a run	يذهب للجري	Good for	مفيد ل = صالح ل	Run to	يجرى الى
Try a new sport	يجرب رياضة	In the world	في العالم	get fitter	يصبح لائق بدنيا
		Go for a run	يذهب للجري		

تصريفات هامة

الكلمة وعكسها

Win - won - won	يفوز	remember X forget	يتذكر X ينسى
Teach - taught - taught	يُدرّس	easy X difficult	سهل X صعب
Tell - told - told	يخبر	fit X unfit	لائق بدنيا X غير لائق بدنيا
Make - made - made	يصنع - يجعل	encourage X discourage	يشجع X يحبط
Know - knew - known	يعرف	possible X impossible	ممكن X مستحيل
Swim - swam - swum	يسبح	popula X unpopular	محبوب X غير محبوب
Bear - bore - born	يولد	Thirsty X hungry	جوعان X عطشان
Show - showed - showed	يظهر - يبين		

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

Invent	يخترع	invite	يدعو	practise	يمارس	practice	تدرب
turn	دور	train	يتدرب				

General Notes

بمعنى هيا بنا المصدر

EX:- Let's go out together .

EX:- Let's watch TV .

Get + (بمعنى يصبح أو يكون) صفة

EX:- I get tired quickly so I can't run .

EX:- I get fitter .

Play يلعب رياضة فيها كره

EX:- I play football .

EX:- I play tennis .

Go + ing يلعب رياضة منتهية ب

EX:- I go swimming .

EX:- I go running .

(do) ing بعدها رياضة ليس بها كره ولا تنتهي ب

EX:- I do karate three times a week .

EX:- I do exercise every day .

I last + بمعنى آخر مرة ويأتي بعدها



ماضي بسيط

EX:- I last watched when I was in Aswan . EX:- I last travelled two years ago .

Similar to

مشابه ل

EX:- Your car is similar my car .

The same

مثل

EX:- Your car is the same as my car .

Different from

مختلف عن

EX:- Your car is different from my car .

Encourage to + مفعول المصدر

EX:- My mother encouraged to cook the food alone .

1 Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d

1-Let's go to the-----and play football.

a. zoo

b. library

c. tower

d.sports centre

2- Squash is -----tennis .

a. the same

b. similar

c. different

d.difficult

3- When Ali was ten, He -----An accident changed his life .

a. make

b. did

c. played

d.had

4- our teacher of English -----us to read English stories at home.

a. discourages

b. encourages

c. does

d.makes

5- Ramy Ashour is sorry that squash isn't a/an -----sport .

a. Olympic

b. national

c. local

d.international

6- I get tried very quickly. I am not very-----.

a. weak

b. fat

c. slow

d.fit

7- Michael Jordan once didn't get -----the school basketball team.

a. at

b. into

c. of

d.on

8- Let's -----horse riding .

a. played

b. play

c. playing

d.plays

9- people who do -----, like high places and water .

a. football

b. tennis

c. diving

d.horse riding

10- people who do -----usually like animals .

a. tennis

b. basket ball

c. running

d.horse riding

11- -----is very popular sport which can be played anywhere with a ball.

a. Football

b. Diving

c. Horse riding

d.walking

12- Ibrahim Hamato is an amazing man who plays table tennis-----Egypt .

a. at

b. for

c. on

d.of

13-My father -----me to join the school football team .

a. hit

b. encouraged

c. gave

d.drove

14-I was said that my mother -----to let me go out with my friends .

a. agreed

b. refused

c. disagreed

d.got

15- My car is -----to yours .

a. alike

b. the same

c. similar

d.like

16- I go for a -----every morning .

a. pun

b. fun

c. run

d.bun

17-Adel Emam is a/an -----man. He is very funny .

a. amazed

b. amazing

c. bored

d.boring



- 18- In the morning I always -----some sports .
a. make b. get c. do d.go
- 19-Ali was angry when he didn't get -----the school football team .
a. to b. of c. into d.over
- 20- I have played three matches. I think I will -----tired.
a. take b. have c. give d.get
- 21- If you don't succeed, don't stop -----.
a. trying b. eating c. drinking d.climbing
- 22- I want to go to university one day but I am worried about my-----
a. tools b. offices c. grades d.classes
- 23- When he was young, Ali -----an accident .
a. had b. gave c. took d.drove
- 24- Ramy Ashour is an Egyptian squash -----
a. worker b. goalkeeper c. player d.referee
- 25-Lamiaa can't remember -----to play squash .
a. What b. how c. why d.which
- 26- Michael Jordan is an-----..basketball player .
a. Egyptian b. Egypt c. American d.America
- 27-Rody -----to run to the end of the road .
a. divers b. flies c. decides d.enjoys
- 28- Oh,Come -----, It will be fun .
a. in b. at c. on d.with
- 29- Ramy Ashour is working -----to change his life .
a. hardly b. harden c. hurry d.hard
- 30- Rocky is a sport which you can play -----a ball
a. which b. without c. under d.iver
- 31- Ibrahim Hamato is an amazing man -----plays table tennis .
a. which b. who c. what d.where
- 32- James Naismith is the man who -----basketball .
a. sold b. bought c. invented d.discovere
- 33-James is the man who ----- basketball .
a. made b. invented c. decided d.discovered
- 34- I have some ----- homework, I can't do it .
a. little b. easy c. difficult d.simple
- 35- Hockey is a sport that teams also play on -----.
a. ice b. water c. oil d.air
- 36- Sometimes ----- swimming with my friends .
a. do b. go c. play d.have
- 37- Lina can't remember how to play ----- .
a. karate b. horse riding c. swimming d.handball
- 38- Tennis is a sport which you play with a ----- and a ball .
a. basket b. rocket c. racket d.pocket
- 39- Alaa is trying to ----- Faten to play a sport .
a. encourage b. decide c. remember d.invent
- 40- football is a very ----- sport .
a. popular b. polluted c. boring d.similar



- 41- Ali ----- an accident when he was twenty .
a. got b. went c. had d. made
- 42- My father agreed ----- let me go to the club .
a. that b. with c. to d. for
- 43- I take a rest when I ----- tired .
a. get b. go c. come d. do
- 44- He failed three times, but he didn't stop -----
a. try b. to try c. trying d. tries
- 45- Ali is good ----- maths; he always comes first.
a. at b. in c. of d. about
- 46- We practice sports in sports- -----
a. centres b. towers c. timetables d. parks
- 47- every one should do a sport. It's -----
a. funny b. final c. fun d. friendly
- 48- I want to go to university one day, but I am worried about my -----
a. arms b. grades c. timetables d. rackets
- 49- People who play basketball are usually very -----
a. short b. easy c. bad d. tall
- 50- England is the country which first ----- football.
a. invented b. interested c. moved d. discovered
- 51- An accident- ----- Ali's life.
a. tried b. worried c. changed d. got
- 52- The boys went for ----- a.
a. to run b. a run c. run d. the run

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - Ali can't do sport , He isn't fat (-----)
- 2 - I couldn't take into our school football team . (-----)
- 3 - Let go to the park . (-----)
- 4 - Who hard do people work to become famous . (-----)
- 5 - She likes to play diving into the Red Sea . (-----)
- 6 - Nada has some difficult homework, She can't make it . (-----)
- 7 - I'm sorrow that squash is not an Olympic sport . (-----)
- 8 - Michael Jordan is an America basketball player . (-----)
- 9 - Let's trying a new sport (-----)
- 10 - A Cinema is a place where you can watch football matches (-----)
- 11 - I have some easy homework, I can't do it . (-----)
- 12 - Come on, You may do it, I will help you . (-----)
- 13 - Why don't we go basketball . (-----)
- 10 - We must discourage people to do good things . (-----)
- 14 - Let's make some exercises . (-----)
- 15 - People who play tennis are usually very tall . (-----)
- 16 - Let's playing for a fun . (-----)
- 17 - Basketball, hockey and squash are kinds of subjects . (-----)
- 18 - I last see Ali two years ago . (-----)
- 19 - My jacket is similar as your jacket . (-----)

- 20 - My mother always encourages me visit my relatives . (-----)
 21 - I am making a project about transport . (-----)
 22 - Ali plays tennis very well on a chair. (-----)
 23 - Ail always makes good in exams. (-----)
 24 - I'm too tired to practice sports today. (-----)
 25 - Alla's T-shirt is similar as mine. (-----)
 26 - Doing diving is Alla's favourite sport . (-----)
 27 - You should play exercises to get fit . (-----)
 28 - Come on, It's time to go to home. (-----)
 29 - Let's work hardly. We haven't enough time . (-----)
 30 - The car I bought is the same to Ali's car . (-----)

عندما تشجع شخص ما على فعل شيء ما فماذا تقول له؟

- Don't worry, It isn't difficult . - لا تقلق الأمر ليس صعبا .
- Oh, come on , It will be fun . - هيا . سيكون الأمر ممتعا .
- Oh , go on . - هيا تقدم . (استمر) .
- You can do it . - يمكنك فعلها .

عندما توافق على فعل شيء ما فماذا تقول ؟

- All right, I will + - حسنا سوف + الفعل الذى ستقوم به . المصدر
- Ok , I will do it . - حسنا سأفعلها .

1- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Baher : My elder sister wants me to play volleyball with her, but I don't want to play with her .

Lamia : Oh , go----- , you like playing volleyball with your sister .

Baher : Yes, I do, but all the people in her team are much older than me .

Lamia : you-----do it, you are really good at volleyball.

Baher : It is in the new-----club. I don't know how to get there.

Lamia :-----worry, It isn't difficult. I can go with you .

2- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Amany : What are you doing now Sara ?

Sara : I am reading a book about -----

Amany : Is squash an -----sport ?

Sara : Yes , It is very interesting .

Amany : Who is the best squash -----?

Sara : Ramy Ashour is one of the -----squasg players.

3- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Ahmed and Nabil are talking about sports

Ahmed : What 's your -----sport ?

Nabil : -----is my favourite sport.

Ahmed : -----did you start it ?

Nabil : I started it two years ago .

Ahmed : Is swimming important for your body?

Nabil : -----, it is .



4-Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Aya is speaking about her favourite subject.

Aya :What 's your favourite subject ?

Huda :----- my favourite subject is English.

Aya :-----teaches you English ?

Huda : Miss Mona -----me .

Aya :-----you good at it?

Huda : Yes , I am good at it .

5-Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Nabil is going on holiday to port Said .

Ali :When are you going on holiday ?

Nabil :----- month.

Ali :Where will you -----?

Nabil : I will gp to Port Said .

Ali :-----will you do there?

Nabil : I will -----in the sea .

6-Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Nabil is asking Samy to go with him to the club.

Nabil :Would you like to come with me to the club ?

Samy : Yes, I would. But I 'm not----- at playing sports..

Nabil :Don't -----,I will help you .

Samy :-----game do you like .

Nabil : I play squash .

Samy : It is wonderful, -----start today .

7-Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Nabil and Samy are talking about Ramy Ashour .

Nabil :Have you heard about Ramy Ashour ?

Samy : Yes, He is an ----- player.

Nabil :Which sport does he-----?

Samy : squash .

Nabil : Did he-----any competition ?

Samy :-----, he did.

8- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Samy tells Nabil about an accident he had .

Nabil :Why were you absent yesterday ?

Samy : Because -----accident.

Nabil :Oh , What -----?

Samy : A car hit me while I was crossing the-----

Nabil :-----it dangerous ?

Samy : No , But I have some pain in my arm .

1-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Toka : What do you like doing ?

Salma :-----

Toka : Me, too .



2-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Toka : ----- ?

Salma : Don't worry , You can do it . Tennis is easy .

Toka : Please , help me do that .

3-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Toka : I am worried about my son Ahmed, What can I do ?

Salma : -----

4-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Amal : ----- ?

Eyad : All right . I will play this game with you ?

Amal : good, I am sure you will do it .

5-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Amal : Let's read this new story .

Eyad : -----

Amal : I think it is exciting .

6-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Amal : ----- ?

Eyad : Because I am not good at swimming .

Amal : Oh, Come on . It will be fun .

7-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Amal : I want to be a doctor one day, But I don't think it will be possible.

Eyad : You can do it .

Amal : -----

8-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Doaa : Hello, Doaa is speaking .

Iman : Hello , Doaa . This is Iman. May I ----- ?

Doaa : Yes , Just a moment, Please, Nora, Iman wants to talk to you .

9-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Mazin : I want to play tennis, But I don't think I will be good at it..

Salem : -----

10-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ola : I wrote a story, But I don't like reading my stories

Riham : Oh , go on , Read it to me , I like your story .

Ola : -----

11-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Nabil : I want to go university one day, but I don't think it will be possible .

Samy : You can do it .

Nabi : -----

12-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Nabil : I must practice every day to be in a sports team, but I am too tired to practice today .

Samy : -----

Nabil : Ok, I will do it .

1-3 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Nabil : Let's try a new sport .

Samy : No , I only want to go home . .

Nabi : Oh , Come on-----

14-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Nabil : I have some difficult homework. I can't do it.

Samy : -----

Nabil : All right , I will try .

Important Paragraphs

موضوعات تعبير هامة

Cairo international stadium

إستاد القاهرة الدولي

Cairo international stadium is in Nasr City . It is in north – east of Africa , It is ten kilometers from the airport . It has 75,000 seats for the fans, It is the home of Egyptian football . Also it has a 50-metre swimming pool . There is also a place for watching horse riding .

إن إستاد القاهرة الدولي فى مدينة نصر . هو فى شمال شرق أفريقيا . هو حوالى 10 كيلو متر من مطار القاهرة . وهو به حوالى 75.000 مقعد للمشجعين . وهو معقل الكرة المصرية . وبه حمام سباحه حوالى 50 متر . ويوجد أيضا مكان لمشاهدة ركوب الخيل .

Ibrahim Hamato

ابراهيم هاماتو

He is an amazing man , He plays table tennis for Egypt . He had an accident When he was ten, He has no arms now . He plays well. I like him.

ابراهيم حماتو رجل مدهش . هو يلعب تنس الطاولة لمصر . حدثت له حادثه عندما هو كان فى سن العاشرة . لم يعد لديه أزرع الان . هو يلعب جيدا . أنا أحبه .

Ramy Ashour

رامي عاشور

He is an Egyptian man . Squash is the sport which he loves. He is sorry that squash is not an Olympic sport . He is working hard to change this .

رامي عاشور رجل مصري . رياضة الاسكواش هى الرياضة الى يحبها . هو حزين لأن رياضة الاسكواش لم تكن رياضة أولمبيه وهو يعمل بجد من أجل ذلك .

Michael Jordan

مايكل جوردان

He is an American basketball player. He didn't get into the school basketball team but he didn't stop trying . He became one of the best player in the world .

مايكل جوردان هو لا لعب كرة سله أمريكي . وهو لم يدخل فريق كرة السلة بالمدرسة . ولكنه لم يتوقف عن المحاولة . هو أصبح واحد من أحسن اللاعبين فى العالم .

The Egyptian football player you like most لايك كرة قدم تحبه جدا

Abu Trika is my favourite player . I like him so much . He played for Al-Ahly team and scored many goals . Also, He scored important goals for our National Team . He respects his club and all people love him . He stopped playing, but he encouraged other football players to do well .

أبو تريكة هو اللاعب المفضل لدى . أحبه كثيرا جدا . هى لعب للنادي الاهلى وأحرز الكثير من الأهداف . و أيضا أحرز أهداف هامه للفريق القومي انه يحترم ناديه وكل الناس تحبه . هو اعتزل اللعب لكنه شجع اللاعبين الآخرين أن يؤدوا بطريقة جيده .

UNIT FIVE PEOPLE WHO WE ADMIRE

LESSONS (1 - 2)

Important Vocabulary

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
admire	يعجب ب	hero	بطل	prize	جائزه
successful	ناجح	medal	ميدالية	accident	حادثة
degree	شهادة علميه	sportspeople	رياضيون	engineer	مهندس
graduate	يتخرج - خريج	newspaper	جريدة	swimmer	سباح
medicine	دواء	swimming	سباحه	competition	منافسه
Germany	المانيا	mountain	جبل	tennis	لاعب تنس
writer	كاتب	The Olympics	الاولمبيات	player	يحدث
facts	حقائق	Hard work	عمل جاد	happen	أحداث
return	يعود	opinion	رأى	events	لص
lamb	خروف صغير	difference	اختلاف	thief	مشهور
				famous	

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Go to university يذهب جامعه	Write about يكتب عن In the past في الماضي	A degree in medicine شهادة في الطب
Do well at يؤدي جيدا في	In different shops في محلات مختلفة	Win... for swimming يفوز في السباحة
The difference between الفرق بين	Get (with) a degree يحصل على درجة علميه	The world's highest اعلى جبال في
Prize for جائزة في مجال	Easy for سهل ل	at sometimes في وقت ا
Have a good opinion لديه رأى جيد في	Stop swimming يتوقف عن السباحة	Good at جيد في
Will be back soon ستعود قريبا	Open aswimming يفتح مدرسه لتعليم السباحه	Good for جيد ل
Win (a prize-medal- competition).. يفوز بميدالية..		Have a car accident يحدث له حادثة سيارة

Get - got - got يحصل على	busy X free مشغول - حر
Teach - taught - taught يدرس	teach X learn يتعلم
Write - wrote - written يكتب	high X low عالي X منخفض
Buy - bought - bought يشتري	similar x different وود X غير وود
Grow - grew - grown ينمو - يكثر	successful X un successful ناجح X غير ناجح
Make - made - made يصنع - يجعل	At first X at last في البداية X في النهاية
Speak - spoke - spoken يتحدث	difficult for X easy f صعب على X سهل على

لاحظ هذه التعريفات جيدا

Admire يعجب ب	Like and have a good opinion of someone رأيك كويس في شخص ما
Hero بطل	Some one that you like because they are very good at something شخص ما تحبه لانهم كويسين جدا في شيء ما
Prize جائزه	Some thing you can get for doing well in work, sport, etc. شيء ما تحصل عليه لقيامك بعمل شيء جيد مثل العمل او الرياضة الخ .
Successful ناجح	Doing very well عمالك شيء بطريقه جيده جدا
Graduate خريج	A person who has got a degree from a university . هو الشخص الذي يحصل على الشهادة العلمية .
Degree درجة علميه	A student gets this after completing university .



Medal	ميدالية	الدرجة العلمية هي التى يحصل عليها الطالب بعد إكمال التعليم الجامعي . جائزة لعمل شيء بطريقه ممتازة . A prize for doing something well
-------	---------	---

LANGAUGE NOTES

واحد من + صفه + est is one of the +

EX:- Dr, Rania Elwani is one of the world's fastest swimmers .

يتوقف Start + v + ing يبدأ x stop + v + ing

يتخلى عن give up + v + ing

EX:- Dr, Rania Elwani started swimming when she was 13 .

EX:- Dr, Rania Elwani stopped swimming now .

EX:- Dr, Rania Elwani gave up swimming.

Graduate (n - v)

(خريج جامعه - يتخرج من الجامعة)

EX:- Ali is a graduate of science department .

على خريج قسم العلوم .

EX:- He graduated at Cairo university .

هو خريج جامعة القاهرة .

(successful - succeed - success)

• successful (adj)

ناجح

EX:- I am successful in English.

EX:- I wasn't successful in maths .

• succeed (v)

ينجح

EX:- He succeeded in getting the best mark .

• Success (n)

ناجح

EX:- He was very surprised by Ali's success .

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1- Rania Elwani won 77-----in swimming competition .

a. degrees

b. models

c. a medal

d. heros

2- Rania Elwani-----stopped swimming now and has become a university, with degree in medicine .

a. will

b. has

c. is

d. can

3- -----is someone that you like because they are very good at something .

a. Medal

b. Prize

c. Degree

d. Hero

4- To -----is to like and have a good opinion of someone.

a. admire

b. hate

c. help

d. visit

5- -----is something that you can get for doing well in work, sport, etc .

a. Punishment

b. Prize

c. Degree

d. Certificate

6- When Yasser was twelve, he-----a car accident .

a. took

b. made

c. had

d. hit

7- With hard work. you can be -----

a. unsuccessful

b. successful

c. weak

d. lazy

8- Rania Elwani is one of the world's fastest-----

a. footballers

b. engineers

c. teachers

d. swimmers

9- I have won a-----, in a school competition for writing stories .

a. key

b. medal

c. number

d. class



- 10- My brother went to university and got a -----in science .
a. degree b. medal c. mark d. remark
- 11- You can be-----with hard work .
a. careless b. dirty c. foolish d. successful
- 12- I haven't won-----but I won't stop trying.
a. foods b. prizes c. sports d. drinks
- 13- Rania Elwani , Ramy Ashour and Mohamed Salah are-----.
a. sports b. sporting c. sports people d. sportsmen
- 14-Mohamed Mounir is the singer, I -----most. .
a. work b. drive c. swim d. admire
- 15- My elder brother-----at Alexandria University in 2013 .
a. entered b. graduated c. attended d. admired
- 16- My -----is Abo Treika, I love him very much
a. reader b. swimmer c. hero d. chef
- 17- I can't see my father very often. He has a -----life.
a. free b. busy c. thin d. young
- 18-Miss Heba has -----all the students how to speak and write English well .
a. learned b. fought c. caught d. taught
- 19-You must work -----to be successful.
a. hardly b. hard c. easily d. happily
- 20- People have read about the great player in the -----
a. farm b. pictures c. newspaper d. photo
- 21- When students finish school , They go to the-----
a. school b. class c. university d. laboratory
- 22- Rania Elwani is one of the world's fastest -----
a. swimmers b. divers c. footballers d. students
- 23- My father has a degree -----medicine .
a. at b. in c. on d. by
- 24- Many Egyptians -----Mohamed Salah .
a. admire b. remember c. remind d. forget
- 25- Rania Elwani has stopped-----now
a. to swim b. swim c. swimming d. swam
- 26- My uncle-----a car accident yesterday .
a. took b. had c. drove d. flew
- 27- Rania Elwani is one of the world's -----swimmers .
a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. the fastest
- 28- Ramy Ashour and Rania Elwani are famous-----
a. teachers b. doctors c. engineers d. sportspeople
- 29- Rania Elwani has become a university..... She had a degree in medicine.
a. graduate b. came c. buy d. sleep
- 30- My friend -----a medal in writing poetry .
a. won b. sold c. swam d. flew
- 31- Life was -----for my friends to study. they have no time.
a. lazy b. easy c. difficult d. busy
- 32- Has the thief-----that man's phone.
a. given b. taken c. robbed d. done



- 33- The children have -----A beautiful story .
a. visited b. become c. written d. done
- 34- My grandmother has -----all the vegetables that we are eating.
a. grown b. been c. become d. done
- 35- How much lamb have they-----from the supermarket .
a. bought b. sold c. made d. grown
- 36- Ayman finished his university studies and got a ----- in medicine.
a. mark b. degree c. step d. money
- 37- A ----- is something that you can get for doing well in work or sport .
a. degree b. hero c. prize d. competition
- 38- Rania Elwani has stopped swimming and has become a university -----.
a. swimmer b. engineer c. graduate d. carpenter
- 39- A ----- is someone who you like because they are very good at something .
a. graduate b. hero c. driver d. farmer
- 40- Imad and his brother have won a lot of sports -----
a. stories b. universities c. newspapers d. competition
- 41- Rania Elwani is one of the people who we -----.
a. grow b. take c. admire d. write
- 42- My grandmother has grown all the ----- we are eating .
a. clothes b. vegetables c. books d. newspapers
- 43 How much lamb have they bought from the ----- ?
a. supermarket b. bookshop c. library d. grocery
- 44- A/An ----- person is someone who does very well .
a. stupid b. lazy c. successful d. ill
- 45- Alaa had a car ----- and he couldn't walk again .
a. competition b. medal c. prize d. accident
- 46- Everyone wants to be the ----- not the worst.
a. good b. best c. shortest d. least
- 47- Ali is a university -----He has a degree in medicine .
a. degree b. hero c. graduate d. prize
- 48- I will get a ----- when I finish university.
a. graduate b. prize c. medal d. degree
- 49- Abu Trika , Hazim Imam and Rania Elwani are ----- .
a. policemen b. sportspeople c. doctors d. teachers

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

degree	درجة علميه	agree	يوافق	Medal	ميداليه	model	نموذج
lamb	خروف صغير	lamp	مصباح	Prize	جائزه	price	سعر
sell	يبيع	Sail	بيحر				

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - I had an accident at my legs . I couldn't talk . (-----)
- 2 - People haven't written on yesterday's accident . (-----)
- 3 - I won A medal in the reading compete . (-----)
- 4 - Where is the similar about the people . (-----)
- 5 - She wanted to make well in the final exams . (-----)
- 6 - Hany worked hard and won a price . (-----)

- 7 - Mr Mohamed makes a good opinion of others . (-----)
- 8 - Work hard to be success. (-----)
- 9 - Ali won the competition and got a model . (-----)
- 10 - What is the prize of this car ? (-----)
- 11 - I prefer eating lamp . (-----)
- 12 - Rania Elwani is one of the world's faster swimmers . (-----)
- 13 - I started read when I was young. . (-----)
- 14 - Ali has stopped ride bikes now . (-----)
- 15 - I prefer eating lamp . (-----)
- 16 - Rania Elwani is one of the world's faster swimmers . (-----)
- 17 - Rania Elwani has taught us that you can do good at a lot of things if you want to. (-----)
- 18 - After the accident, life was difficult of Yasser . (-----)
- 19 - Yasser went to university and got a agree. (-----)
- 20 - Successful people usually do very badly. (-----)
- 21 - My cousin is a successful tennis play. (-----)
- 22 - My brother earned a medal in swimming last year. (-----)
- 23 - My cousin has stopped to swim, now he is a footballer (-----)
- 24 - Do you like to win mountains . (-----)
- 25 - With hard work, you can be unsuccessful. (-----)
- 26 - Rania Elwani opened a school from young swimmers. (-----)

GRAMMER

زمن المضارع التام البسيط The present perfect

(التكوين Form)

(he - she - it)

has ('s)

+ P.P

(التصريف الثالث للفعل)

(I - we - you - they)

have ('ve)

EX:- He has eaten .

EX:- They have studied English .

الكلمات الدالة على الزمن

Just حالا - توا	Already بالفعل	Ever من قبل	Never أبدا
Since منذ	For لمدة	Yet حتى الآن	

استخداماته

- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث فى الماضى بدون تحديد وقت حدوثه وعند تحديد الوقت نستخدم الماضى البسيط .
تدل على ان الفاعل سافر الى أسوان لكن لم نعرف متى .
EX:- He has travelled to Aswan .
- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى وما زال مستمر حتى الآن .
تدل على ان الفاعل بدأ يدرس الانجليزية وما زال يدرسها حتى الآن .
EX:- He has studied English since 2009 .
- يستخدم ليعبر عن حدث تم فى الماضى ول أثر فى الوقت الحاضر .
EX:- My hands are dirty. I have mended my car .

عند النفى

عند النفى نضع not بعد has - have (hasn't - haven't) .

EX:- He has not played the match .

EX:- He hasn't eaten the food .

EX:- They have not gone out

EX:- They haven't drunk wine .

Has (he – she – it)

+ الفاعل + (التصريف الثالث) عند السؤال بهل نستخدم

Have (I – we – you – they)

EX:- Has he watched TV ?

EX:- Have you drunk tea ?

Has (he – she – it)

+ الفاعل + (التصريف الثالث) عند السؤال بأداة نستخدم

Have (I – we – you – they)

EX:- Where has she cooked ?

EX:- When have you drunk tea ?

تدل على أن الفاعل ذهب لمكان ما وما زال هناك ولم يعد (Has – Have) + gone

تدل على أن الفاعل ذهب لمكان وعاد منه (Has – Have) + been

EX:- He has gone to England . = He is in England now

تدل على أن الفاعل ذهب الى لندن ولم يعود لوطنه وما زال موجود فى لندن حتى الآن

تدل على ان الفاعل ذهب الى لندن ثم عاد لوطنه مره ثانيه . EX:-He has been to London .

1 Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d

1-Ali has ----- to England, He visited England at some time in the past

a. gone b. been c. return d. stayed

2- Mona has ----- to the shops. She will be back soon .

a. gone b. been c. stayed d. visited

3-Soha has ----- her homework .

a. do b. done c. did d. does

4- Mohamed Hamdi ----- A tennis match for two years ..

a. plays b. played c. has played d. play

5-Have you ----- the internet this week .

a. used b. use c. using d. uses

6- Sayed----- a prep school this year .

a. starting b. start c. has started d. have started

7- My uncle and aunt ----- me an e- mail yesterday .

a. writing b. wrote c. have written d. has written

8- ----- done your homework ?

a. you have b. do you c. did you d. have you

9- My sister----- . to school and she will come back soon .

a. has been b. has gone c. is going d. go

10- He has sent me an e-mail. He ----- it yesterday .

a. Write b. had written c. has written d. wrote

11- Has Ali----- his homework ?

a. finish b. finished c. had finished d. has finished

12- I----- to Japan. I came back a year ago.

a. have been b. have gone c. was going d. go

13- My cousin has----- a successful football player .

a. becoming b. became c. become d. to become

14- ----- the thief taken your phone .

a. Does b. Did c. Have d. Has



- 15- Have you cooked lunch ? Yes , -----
a. I had b. I did c. I do d. I have
- 16- Have you been ----- Luxor ?
a. in b. to c. on d. for
- 17- Has your brother ----- a degree in medicine .
a. to get b. getting c. got d. get
- 18- Rania Elwani has stopped -----now .
a. to swim b. swim c. swimming d. swam
- 19- People haven't ----- about Yasser in the newspaper.
a. write b. writing c. wrote d. written
- 20- Rania Elwani ----- stopped swimming now and has become a university Graduate.
a. have b. is c. has d. are
- 21- Ali and his brother have -----a lot of sports copetition.
a. won b. win c. wins d. winning
- 22-- The farmer has ----- corn and wheat.
a. grow b. grew c. grown d. grows
- 23- Faten has -----to England. She came back two days ago .
a. gone b. went c. been d. be
- 24- She -----a taxi to school last week.
a. taken b. took c. has taken d. takes
- 25- Hamdi ----- to the UEA, but his father is there now .
a. has been not b. not has been c. not has been d. has not been
- 26- Bill Gates has----- money to help poor people .
a. give b. gives c. given d. gave
- 27- I have been on a plane but I ----- met a famous person .
a. haven't b. have c. has d. hasn't
- 28- The teacher has----- to the class and told them what will happen next week .
a. speaks b. spoke c. spoken d. speak
- 29- Have you ----- to Luxor ?
a. be b. are c. been d. was
- 30- Emad has----- to America, He is still there .
a. been b. gone c. go d. being

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - They have be to school . (-----)
- 2 - My father has buying me a new computer . (-----)
- 3 - Has Nabil and Ali seen the film on TV ? (-----)
- 4 - Samar has have her lunch . (-----)
- 5 - What subjects has Salma get today ? (-----)
- 6 - He have painted a beautiful picture . (-----)
- 7 - Someone have sent me this e-mail . I don't know who he is (-----)
- 8 - My father is a teacher , he has teaching many children. (-----)
- 9 - I have never read an elephant ? (-----)
- 10 - I have never be to other countries . (-----)
- 11 - Do you meet my friend? (-----)

- 10 - My favourite writer has wrote a new book . (-----)
- 11-My brother earned a medal in swimming last year. (-----)
- 12-My cousin has stopped to swim, now he is a footballer (-----)
- 13-Do you like to win mountains . (-----)
- 14-With hard work, you can be unsuccessful. (-----)
- 15-Rania Elwani opened a school from young swimmers. (-----)
- 16-Has Ali buys his mother some flowers? (-----)
- 17-Mona has been to the shops, she will be back soon. (-----)

UNIT FIVE PEOPLE WHO WE ADMIRE

LESSONS (3 - 4)

Important Vocabulary

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
introduce	يقدم	hero	بطل	university	جامعة
neighbour	جار	pleased	ميداليه	charity	جمعية خيرية
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	exciting	مثير	business	عمل تجارى
age	عمر	sail	يبحر	professor	استاذ جامعي
offices	مكاتب	poor family	عائلته فقيره	do well	يؤدى بشكل
Japanese	اللغة اليابانية	famous	مشهور	amazing	جيد
Science degree	شهادته علميه	law	القانون		مدهش

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Introduce ...to ... يقدم...الى...	Sail on the Nile أراك لاحقاً يقضى وقت جيد	Pleased to meet you . سررت لمقابلتك
How do you do ? كيف حالك ؟	Have a good time يقضى وقت جيد	It's nice to meet you . شئىء لطيف أن أراك
Get a degree in يحصل على درجة علميه فى	Get (with) a degree يحصل على درجة علميه	Born to a poor family ولد من أسرة فقيرة
Get married يتزوج	At the age of فى سن	Place of birth محل الميلاد
Take photos for a newspaper يلتقط صور لجريدهcome here for a holiday يأتى هنا للإجازة	On a plane على متن الطائرة
Study (language - law) يدرس القانون - لغه	Ride (camel - horse) يركب	get (degree- prize) يحصل على درجة علميه - جائزه
Have a good time يقضى وقتاً لطيفاً جيداً	Do interesting things يقوم بعمل أشياء شيقه	

تصريفات هامة

الكلمة وعكسها

Ride - rode - ridden	يركب	exciting X boring	مثير X ممل
Teach - taught - taught	يدرس	usual X unusual	معتاد X غير معتاد
Write - wrote - written	يكتب	poor X rich	فقير X غنى
Buy - bought - bought	يشترى	pleased X sad	مسرور X حزين

LANGAUGE NOTES

(I - he- she) was born in (سنه - شهر - مكان) بمعنى ولد فى

(I- he-she) was born on (تاريخ كامل - يوم) بمعنى ولد فى

EX:- I was born in Cairo . EX:- He was in December .

EX:- I was born in 1982 . EX:- He was on Friday .

EX:- He was on 5th December .

Spend + time + v + ing يقضى فى
Interested in + v + ing مهتم ب (للعائل)
Interesting بمعنى شيق (لغير العائل)

EX:- He spent three hours watching TV .

EX:- He is interested in reading English .

EX:- The film which I saw yesterday was interesting .

• عندما نقابل شخص لأول مره يمكن استخدام هذه الجمل

الرد على	الجمل
How do you do ?	تشرفت
Pleased to meet you.	سعدت بلقائك
It's nice to meet you	من الرائع مقابلتك

عند انتهاء المقابل نقول

It's nice to meet you. Good bye	See you later .
كان من الرائع مقابلتك . مع السلامة .	أراك لاحقا

عند تقديم شخص لشخص آخر يمكن استخدام هذه الجمل

- Have you met (my friend) ? هل قابلت صديقي ؟
- This is (my neighbor , Mr Ali) . هذا هو جاري الأستاذ على .
- These are (my friends, Alaa and Ehab) . هؤلاء اصدقائي علاء وإيهاب .

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1- -----is a prize for doing something well .
a. Graduate b. Model c. Punishment d. Medal
- 2- A person that many people know is -----
a. usual b. famous c. lazy d. bad
- 3- bill Gates has -----many prizes .
a. studied b. won c. gained d. washed
- 4- I ----- My new friend to my father .
a. produced b. introduced c. met d. took
- 5- He got his -----in medicine from Cairo university .
a. agree b. degree c. graduate d. medal
- 6- Mr Banks -----photos for a newspaper in London .
a. does b. gives c. takes d. writes
- 7- The opposite of „ exciting „ is -----
a. amazing b. wonderful c. fantastic d. boring
- 8- I've been to the pyramids, but I haven't sailed -----the Nile.
a. in b. at c. of d. on
- 9- Have you -----, on the Nile .
a. sell b. flown c. sailed d. driven
- 10- I have met some -----people, I enjoyed my time with them .
a. interesting b. interested c. boring d. bored



- 11- See you-----Mr Banks
a. late b. lately c. letter d. later
- 12- -----do you do Mr Ali ?
a. Where b. When c. How d. who
- 13- It was-----to meet you, Mr Ali, Good Bye .
a. famous b. nice c. hero d. medal
- 14-I haven't -----an elephant before .
a. driven b. flown c. ridden d. sailed
- 15- He spends most of his time -----charities
a. helping b. help c. to help d. helped
- 16- A student gets his -----after completing university
a. medal b. degree c. hero d. graduate
- 17- A-----is a person who has got a degree from a university .
a. baby b. child c. got d. graduate
- 18- -----.. is someone who you admire.
a. Graduate b. Hero c. Famous d. Successful
- 19- My grandfather was always interested ----- helping people .
a. at b. in c. on d. about
- 20- Salma got married at the----- of twenty .
a. ago b. age c. length d. time
- 21- A-----person is the one who many people know.
a. poor b. careless c. careful d. famous
- 22-Alaa -----me to her friend Ola .
a. introduced b. produced c. gave d. knew
- 23- It is-----to cover yourself in a blanket in summer .
a. interested b. unusual c. usual d. excited
- 24-Mohamed Sobhy, the most interesting actor spends most of his work helping-----
a. businessmen b. cats c. charities d. computers
- 25- He wanted to be a lawyer, so he studied-----
a. law b. medicine c. science d. maths
- 26-A - What's your -----? B - 15th March.
a. birth b. date of birth c. place of birth d. birth place
- 27- My-----of birth is Helwan .
a. home b. date c. place d. post office
- 28-My -----is the one living next to me.
a. relative b. friend c. neighbour d. classmate
- 29- I have -----on the Red Sea last Sunday .
a. driven b. sold c. sailed d. seen
- 30- My grandfather was always interested-----helping people .
a. in b. ate c. of d. by
- 31- My friend was born in a poor-----It isn't far from the city centre
a. villa b. village c. family d. vase
- 32-Miss Amal has -----us many new words in English .
a. taught b. learned c. taken d. worked
- 33- When you meet your new neighbor you can say -----to meet you ,,
a. Dirty b. please c. pleased d. Upset



- 34- I-----a good time in the swimming pool yesterday.
a. took b. had c. gave d. presented
- 35- A/An-----is someone who teaches students at university.
a. actor b. engineer c. professor d. farmer
- 36- What's your -----For tomorrow ?
a. time b. table c. timetable d. time table
- 37- It's nice-----your friends .
a. meet b. meeting c. to meet d. to meeting
- 38- My father got his degree for Alexandria -----
a. school b. class c. university d. lighthouse
- 39- Someone who has done very well in a job is -----
a. bad b. funny c. wealthy d. successful
- 40- I won a prize-----the age of ten .
a. in b. at c. of d. by
- 41- A-----is someone you admire .
a. hero b. singer c. driver d. doctor
- 42- After I left university, I started a computer-----
a. neighbor b. business c. visit d. timetable
- 43- The ----- destroyed a lot of houses and roads .
a. earthquake b. match c. charity d. timetable
- 44- Have you -----on the Nile?
a. driven b. ridden c. sailed d. grown
- 45- Ahmed's ----- of birth is the UAE .
a. date b. business c. interest d. place
- 46- My brother ----- married in 2007 .
a. went b. did c. got d. came
- 47- A -----gives money to poor people .
a. company b. charity c. school d. hospital
- 48- Swimming and foot ball are my -----.
a. interests b. studies c. downstairs d. jobs
- 49- Ziad was born----- a rich family .
a. at b. by c. with d. to
- 50- This is my first ----- to Egypt .
a. sail b. visit c. meet d. take
- 51- I am interested ----- swimming .
a. at b. in c. of d. with
- 52- ----- notes about the person you admire.
a. Work b. Sail c. make d. Bake
- 53- ----- a good time in Egypt Mr Banks .
a. Have b. Be c. Do d. visit
- 54- Have you ----- the pyramids.
a. ridden b. seen c. done d. won
- 55- I really----- your self.
a. meet b. admire c. grow d. speak
- 56- Ali has ----- to England. Now he is in Cairo.
a. gone b. visited c. made d. been



57-He----- across the Atlantic .

a. talked

b. sailed

c. happened

d. walked

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

Low	منخفض	law	قانون	pleased	مسرور	please	من فضلك
office	مكتب	officer	ضابط	age	سن - عمر	ago	منذ
meat	لحم	Meet	يقابل	Boat	قارب	Bought	اشترى
ride	يركب	Read	يقرأ				

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - I am please to meet you . (-----)
- 2 - A hero is a person who has got a degree from university . (-----)
- 3 - He was born at a poor family ? (-----)
- 4 - I made and his brother have earned a lot of sports competition (-----).
- 5 - Hanan has pointed beautiful pictures . (-----)
- 6 - It's nice to meat you . (-----)
- 7 - My brother, Ali has boat a new car . (-----)
- 8 - My father is a teacher , he has teaching many children . (-----)
- 9 - I have never read an elephant ? (-----)
- 10 - Please to meet you, Ali . (-----)
- 11 - Have you been in a plane ? (-----)
- 12 - It's nice to meet you two . (-----)
- 13 - Talking photos is my favourite hobby . (-----)
- 14 - Have you come here to a holiday ? (-----)
- 15 - Tell me about some of the things you have made . (-----)
- 16 - Bill Gates has taken money to charities to help poor people (-----)
- 17 - He spends most of time read stories . (-----)
- 18 - Ahmed is interested in take photos . (-----)
- 19 - I was born on March . (-----)
- 20 - Bill Gates went to Harvard University to study low . (-----)
- 21 - He spends most of his time help charities .. (-----)
- 22 - Cairo is an amazed city . (-----)
- 23 - A teacher is a person who teaches in a university . (-----)
- 24 - After starting university, a student gets a degree . (-----)
- 25 - When I go to university, I will study low . (-----)
- 26 - Gat's computer business has desks all over the world . (-----)
- 27 - My mother is a teacher . She learns maths . (-----)

1 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Dina is introducing her cousin to her friends : -

Dina : Hello, Riham and Leila , Have you -----my cousin , Nadia?

Riham : ----- to meet you , Nadia ..

Dina : Nadia,-----are my good friends, Riham and Leila.

Nadia : How do you-----? It's nice to meet Dina's friends .

Leila : It's nice to meet you , too .

Nadia : Thank you .



2 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Mr Ibrahim meets Mr Banks in the morning

Mr Ibrahim : Good morning Mr Banks, -----are you ?

Mr Banks : I'm fine thanks, Mr Ibrahim , And you ?

Mr Ibrahim : I'm fine, too. Have you -----Cairo before ?

Mr Banks : No , I haven't . This is my-----visit, Cairo is an amazing city .

Mr Ibrahim : Have you come here for a -----?

Mr Banks : No, I have come here to work, I take photos for a newspaper .

3 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Tamer introduces his cousin, Samir to his friend

Tamer : Hi, Karim. This is my cousin, Samir. He lives in Jordan.

Samir : It's nice to -----you , Karim .

Karim : Pleased to meet you too, Samir -----you visited Cairo before ?

Samir : No , I -----but I have been to Siwa .

Karim : Do you mean that you have been to Siwa but not to Cairo ?

Samir : That's right , -----there with my university .

4 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Ayman introduces his pen friend, John, to his friend Ashraf

Ayman : This is my English pen friend , John ..

Ashraf : It's -----to meet you .

John : Thank you. You have many famous places here in Egypt.

Ashraf : Which famous places have you -----?

John : I have visited the -----in Giza.

Ashraf : Have a nice -----in Egypt .

5 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Lili and Noha are talking about Rania Elwani .

Lili : Have you heard about Rania Elwani .

Noha : Yes, She is a famous Egyptian -----

Lili : Has she got any -----?

Noha : Yes , She graduated from university and now she is a doctor .

Lili : -----does she do now ?

Noha : She works -----to help sportspeople in Egypt .

6 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Lili is worried about her dad .

Mum : What's wrong with you , Lili ?

Lili : I'm worried mum, Dad's late?

Mum : He must-----with some friends .

Lili : I see, dad is very -----these days. He works for a long time every day .

Mum : That's right , but -----he will be home soon .

Lili : Ok , I am waiting .

1-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Toka : This is my friend Nada .

Salma : ----- ,



2-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Lamia :
Nadia : Good evening, Miss Dina Have you met my sister, Nabila?
Nabila , this is my teacher, Miss Dina .
Miss Dina : Pleased to meet you , Nabila .

3-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Toka : When were you born ?
Salma :

4-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Amal : Has our mother finished cooking lunch ?
Eyad :

5-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Amal : Have you sailed on the Nile ?
Norhan : No, I haven't , but
Amal : Oh ,The Red Sea is very beautiful .

6-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Mr Kamal :?
Mr Nwder : Pleased to meet you , Farida

7-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Amal : How are you ?
Norhan : No, I haven't , but

8-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Amal :?
Norhan : No, I haven't, but I have sailed on The Red Sea .
Amal : Let's sail together .

9-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Amal : It's nice to meet you, Welcome to Egypt.
Tourist :
Amal : I hope you will enjoy your stay .

10-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Amal :?
Norhan : Yes, He has lived in London for twenty years .

11-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Shreen : What does an engineer do ?
Nagwa :
Shreen : I think it is an amazing job .

12-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Nagi :?
Nader : Because I have seen a car newer than it .

Important Paragraphs

موضوعات هامة

Famous sportsman مشهور رجل رياضي

Abu Trika is the most famous sportsman of the 21st century . He is a great player . He played for El Ahli team . I love him a lot because he scored many goals for his team and his national team . he won the prize for the best player in Africa . He retired from playing in 2014 .

أبو تريكة أشهر رجل رياضي في القرن الحادي والعشرين . أنه لاعب عظيم . هو لعب للنادي الأهلي . أحبه لأنه أحرز العديد من الأهداف لفريقه وللمنتخب الوطني . هو فاز بجائزة أحسن لاعب في أفريقيا . هو اعتزل اللعب في عام 2014 .

A successful person you know

My father is one of the most successful people in my sight . He is a good English teacher . He is hard - working. He is interested his pupils and gives them science and a advice . He provides them with a good information to pass the exams easily . most of his pupils get the best mark .he won the prize for the ideal teacher in his country .

أبي واحد من أكثر الناس نجاحا من وجهة نظري . أنه مدرس جيد . أنه مجتهد . أنه يهتم بتلاميذه ويمدهم بالعلم والنصيحة . أنه يمددهم بالمعلومة الجيدة لكي يجتازوا الاختبارات بسهولة . معظم تلاميذه يحصلون على أحسن الدرجات . أنه فاز بجائزة المدرس المثالي في بلده .

Rania Elwani رانيا علوانى

Dr Rania Elwani is one of the world's fastest swimmers . When she was 13 , she won 77 medals in swimming competitions , She has stopped swimming now and has become a university graduate , Now she has a busy life as a doctor , She also works hard to help sports in Egypt .

الدكتورة رانيا علوانى هي واحدة من أسرع السباحات في العلم . عندما كانت في سن 13 سنة هي فازت ب 77 جائزة في مسابقات السباحة . هي توقفت عن السباحة الآن وأصبحت خريجه جامعيه . الآن لديها حياة مشغولة كطبيبه . هي أيضا تعمل لتساعد الرياضيين في مصر .

UNIT SIX IMPORTANT PLACES

LESSONS (1-2)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
tourist	سائح	tribe	قبيلة	rainforest	غابه
Antarctica	قارة قطبيه	beach	شاطى	dry	جاف
Atacama	جنوبيه	Chile	دولة شيلي	snow	جليد
desert	صحراء اتاكاما	part	جزء	rain	مطر
melt	ينوب	stars	نجوم	experience	خبره
town	مدينه صغيره	earth	كوكب الأرض	weather	طقس
amazing	مدهش	area	منطقه	warm	دافئ
once	ذات مره				
however	مع ذلك				

تعابير و حروف جر هامة

In the world	في العالم	Far from	بعيد عن	In the sky	في السماء
On earth	على وجه الأرض	By the beach	بجوار الشاطئ	For the first time	لأول مره
By the sea	بالقرب من البحر	In the far south	في أقصى الجنوب	a 95-year-old man	رجل في الخامسة والتسعين من عمره
In a minute	في دقيقه				

الكلمة	معناها
Antarctica القارة القطبية الجنوبية	A Place in the far south of the world that is always very cold. هي مكان في أقصى جنوب العالم ودائما تكون باردة جدا .
Beach شاطئ البحر	A place by the sea where you can sit or play games. هو مكان بجوار البحر حيث تستطيع أن تجلس أو تلعب الألعاب .
dry جاف	A place or thing that has no water. مكان أو شيء بدون مياه
rainforest غابة	A warm place with a lot of trees, where it rains a lot. مكان دافئ بكثير من الأشجار حيث تمطر كثيرا .
tribe قبيلة	A group of people with the same language who live in the same area . مجموعه من الناس بنفس اللغة والذين يعيشون في نفس المنطقة .

LANGAUGE NOTES

Because of + (v + ing or noun)

EX:- Has your school ever because of bad weather ?

EX:- I am happy because of passing my exam .

Because + فعل + فاعل

EX:- I am very happy because I passed my exam .

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- There is always ice in-----it never melts .
a. America b. Antarctica c. rainforest d. the Atacama Desert
- is a place by the sea where you can sit or play games .
a. Rainforest b. Beach c. Bank d. Straem
- A place or thing that has no water is -----.
a. foggy b. rainy c. wet d. dry
- is a warm place with a lot of trees, where it rains a lot .
a. rainforest b. Beach c. Antarctica d. Tribe
- A group of people with the same language, who live in the same area is called a -----
a. pilots b. travelers c. tourists d. tribe
- The Atacama in -----Chile is one of the driest places in the world
a. island b. lake c. desert d. rainforest
- In Antarctica , some of the ice has never -----
a. frozen b. melted c. rained d. snowed
- Rainforest are full of -----animals and plants .
a. easy b. difficult c. amazing d. clever
- Alexandria has one of the beautiful ----- in Egypt .
a. rivers b. beaches c. lakes d. waterfalls
- In-----there are trees, animals and people who live there .
a. rainforests b. zoos c. homes d. tribes
- There is a lot of ice in -----
a. Antarctica b. desert c. school d. office
- Many -----from all over the world visit the pyramids and the Sphinx in Egypt .
a. drivers b. divers c. tourists d. teachers
- A-----is a group of people with the same language, who live in the same area .
a. team b. tribe c. staff d. crowd
- It-----in Egypt in 2014 for the first time in many years .
a. snowed b. rained c. dried d. shone



- 15- When you heat ice . It -----
a. boils b.melts c. floats d. sinks
- 16- A -----place is that has no water in it .
a. dirty b.wet c. dry d. warm
- 17- There are a lot of people who live in the Amazon -----
a. Desert b.Zoos c. Mountains d. Rainforests
- 18-----in the far south part of the world .
a. America b.Antarctica c. Atacama Desert d. The Western Desert
- 19-We live in an -----world
a. amazing b.amazed c. amazement d. amaze
- 20- There are some -----living in Sinai .
a. groups b.trips c. desert d. tribes
- 21- You can see more-----in the sky of San Perdo de Atacama.
a. planes b.clouds c. snow d. stars
- 22-You can dive to the -----Of that river.
a. top b.bottom c. width d. length
- 23- -----come from all over the world and visit out ancient places .
a. Tourists b.Tribes c. Towers d. Florists
- 24- There's always-----in Antaretica .
a. flood b.ice c. rain d. rice
- 25- Some of the-----Who live in the rainforest never leave it.
a. parts b.tribes c. tourists d. parents
- 26- A -----is a place by the sea where you can sit or play games .
a. desert b.forests c. beach d. tribe
- 27- There is always -----in Antarctica. It never melts .
a. ice b.water c. sand d. oil
- 28- Yesterday, I drove a car -----The first time in my life .
a. in b.at c. for d. on
- 29- Omar lives far -----his school .
a. from b.to c. about d. in
- 30- In our school, There are -----students .
a. A millions b.a hundreds c. hundred d. hundred 's
- 31- The Atacama Desert is one of the driest places on -----
a. earth b.ground c. land d. world
- 32- A5-----girl won the first painting prize .
a. years old b.years-old c. year-old d. year old
- 33- Some people like life in a city -----, like life in a village .
a. another b.other c. the other d. others
- 34- It -----in Cairo in 2014 .
a. snowed b.melted c. lived d. dried
- 35- -----is a place in the far south of the world that is always very cold.
a. Amazon b.Atacama c. Antarctica d. San Pedro
- 36- A -----is a warm place with a lot of trees where it rains a lot .
a. rainforest b.tribe c. beach d. desert
- 37- Atacama Desert is one of the-----places in the world .
a. coldest b.tallest c. driest d. smallest



38- I don't want this, show me-----One , please .

a. other

b. another

c. others

d. the others

39- A-----is a group of people with the same language , Who live in the same area.

a. tribe

b. team

c. family

d. class

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

1 - Some tribes live for from any city and have never left the rainforest (-----)

2 - There is always rice in Antarctica .

(-----)

3 - A desert is a place which is very wet .

(-----)

4 - When you put ice in the sun, It freezes .

(-----)

5 - Some trips live in far areas .

(-----)

6 - Some parts of my house need to be painted again .

(-----)

7 - Living in the desert isn't easy .

(-----)

8 - Antarctica is one of the most import places in the world .

(-----)

9 - Some people who live in the Amazon rainfall have never left it .

(-----)

10 - At night, you can see moons in the sky.

(-----)

11 - Ice snow quickly in hot water .

(-----)

12 - There is always water in Antarctica , It never melts .

(-----)

13 - If you leave ice in the sun, It snows .

(-----)

14 - Wild Animals live in houses .

(-----)

15 - Tourists drive camels at the pyramids .

(-----)

16 - The opposite of top is button .

(-----)

17 - My grandfather lives in Alexandria in the beach .

(-----)

18 - Tours like visiting Luxor in Winter .

(-----)

19 - Some tribes live in the Amazon snowforest .

(-----)

The present perfect with(Ever and Never)

„ Ever „ with Yes / No question

تستخدم ever فى السؤال مع زمن المضارع التام عند السؤال بهل بمعنى من قبل وتعبر عن خبره سابقه .

Has

+ الفاعل + ever + P.p?

Have

EX:- Have you ever been to Aswan ?

No , I haven't .

Yes , I have .

„ Never „ With negative sentences

تستخدم Never لنفى الجملة مع عدم استخدام كلمة Not فيها .

Has

+ الفاعل + + never + P.P

Have

يمكن استخدام ever فى السؤال وعند الاجابه بالنفى تستخدم كلمة never

EX:- Have you ever played football ?

No , I have never played football .

Yes , I have . I played football .



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1- Ali has-----Travelled by plane before .
a. ever b. never c. been d. gone
- 2- Have you-----been ti the desert ? Yes, I have
a. ever b. never c. still d. now
- 3- Some tribes -----, left the rainforest .
a. has b. haven't c. did d. didn't
- 4-He has never -----the sea .
a. see b. saw c. seen d. seeing
- 5-I-----never met a famous person .
a. do b. are c. have d. was
- 6- In Antarctica , the ice has -----melted .
a. ever b. never c. just d. still
- 7- Have you ever-----an e-mail to a pen friend ?
a. write b. wrote c. written d. writing
- 8- Have you ever been to Sinai ? - No , I -----
a. have ever b. haven't c. ever d. have never
- 9- Has it ever -----, in the desert .
a. rain b. rains c. raining d. rained
- 10- I have -----visited the Western Desert. I'd like to go one day .
a. ever b. never c. now d. before
- 11- I have never-----salted fish before .
a. eating b. eaten c. eat d. ate
- 12- Have you ever-----to Port Said ?
a. gone b. go c. going d. went
- 13-Ali has-----travelled by plane before .
a. yet b. ever c. never d. last
- 14-Have you-----met a famous person .
a. never b. yet c. last d. ever
- 15- Have you ever -----a lion .
a. see b. seen c. saw d. seeing
- 16- Ali has never -----in canal of his village .
a. swum b. swim c. swam d. swimming
- 17- No , I-----,travelled to Aswan this year .
a. has never b. have never c. has ever d. have ever
- 18-----,they travelled to Aswan ?
a. Has b. Did c. Have d. Do
- 19-Maha -----washed the dishes .
a. haven't b. didn't c. doesn't d. doesn't
- 20- My father has -----me a computer .
a. buy b. bought c. buying d. buys
- 21- Has it -----snowed in Cairo ?
a. never b. ever c. yet d. just
- 22-My brother has been to Cairo but I-----
a. didn't b. have c. haven't d. don't



- 23-My friend has -----travelled by train, but I have .
a. never b. ever c. yet d. just
- 24- Have you ever-----to the museum .
a. be b. being c. been d. went
- 25-In some parts of the desert, It has -----rained .
a. ever b. no c. never d. don't
- 26-Some tribes have-----left the rainforests .
a. ever b. skyscrapers c. fields d. forests
- 27- A -----is a big area full of trees .
a. club b. no c. never d. can
- 28- Has it -----snowed in Cairo ?
a. never b. but c. did d. ever
- 29- I have never-----karate before .
a. do b. did c. done d. doing
- 30- The children -----never been to a museum before
a. has b. having c. have d. did
- 31-Has Ahmed -----played squash ?
a. ever b. never c. ago d. now
- 32- -----your parents lived in another country .
a. Has b. Was c. Have d. Are
- 33- In Antarctica, some of the ice has -----melted .
a. ever b. ago c. now d. never
- 34-Have your school ever -----because of bad weather ?
a. close b. closing c. closed d. closes
- 35- I have never -----Sushi .
a. eat b. ate c. eaten d. eats
- 36-Have people-----lived there ?
a. will b. ever c. never d. ago
- 37- Have your parents ever-----a car ?
a. sell b. sold c. sells d. selling
- 38-I've -----met a famous person .
a. yesterday b. ever c. never d. ago

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

Tribe	قبيلة	Trip	رحلة	Parts	أجزاء	Ports	موانئ
desert	صحراء	dessert	الحلو بعد الأكل				

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - No, I have ever been there . (-----)
- 2 - Has it ever snow in Saudi Arabia ? (-----)
- 3 - I haven't go to the stadium . (-----)
- 4 - Have your parents lived on another country ? . (-----)
- 5 - Has it ever snow in Cairo ? (-----)
- 6 - Have you never been to the desert ? (-----)
- 7 - I 've ever met a famous person before . (-----)
- 8 - Have you ever rode a camel . (-----)
- 9 - Do you ever been to South America ? (-----)

للف الصف الثاني الإعدادي

الترم الأول

- 10 - Have you every gone diving . (-----)
 11 - Have you never been to Aswan ? (-----)
 12 - Robert has ever travelled to Egypt (-----)
 13 - Did you ever ridden a horse ? (-----)
 14 - Have you ever saw a famous building ? . (-----)
 15 - Ahmed and his brother have never went to stadium before . (-----)
 16 - Have you never read a book by Chales Dicknes . (-----)
 17 - This story has be a film and book . (-----)
 18 - I have ever visited the pyramids . (-----)
 19 - Have Ali ever played tennis . (-----)

UNIT SIX IMPORTANT PLACES

LESSONS (3-4)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
camp	معسكر	repeat	يكبر	statue	تمثال
jewellery	مجوهرات	antiquities	أثار قديمة	sculpture	تمثال منحوت
coins	عملات معدنية	clarify	يوضح	clarification	توضيح
sightsee	يزور أماكن	fish	سمك	town centre	وسط المدينة
	سياحية	join	ينضم الى	objects	أشياء
contain	يحتوى على	building	مبنى	dive	يغوص
notebook	كراسه	historical	تاريخي	temple	معبد
popular	شعبي	outdoor	خارج المنزل	gardens	حدائق
felucca	قارب صغير	stones	احجار	metal	معدن
machine	آله	indoor	داخل المنزل	dam	سد

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Sail around	يبحر حول	Around an island	حول الجزيرة	Stay in a hotel	يقوم في فندق
Welcome to	مرحبا في	Want to+ المصدر	يريد أن	Think about / of	يفكر في
in England	في إنجلترا	Write..... down	يكتب	Learn about	يتعلم عن
Used as money	يستخدم كنفود	Do you mean	هل تقصد ؟	works of Art	اعمال فنية
That's right	هذا صحيح	I see	أنا أفهم / أنا أدرك	Keep safe	يبقى آمنا
Is that what you mean?	أهذا ما تقصده ؟	The best place to visit is	أفضل مكان للزيارة هو	it's great	هذا عظيم
Do different things/karate	يقوم بشيء - يمارس كاراتيه	Go camping	يذهب للتخييم	CE=Common Era	عصر مسيحي
				Make suggestion	يقدم اقتراح

Famous places

أماكن مشهورة

Temple of Karnak	معبد الكرنك	The Kharga Museum	متحف الخارجة
The Aswan Dam	السد العالي	The Nubia Museum	متحف النوبة
The White Desert	الصحراء البيضاء	The western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
The Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري	Elephantine Island	جزيرة فيلة

الكلمات وتعريفاتها

Jewellery	مجوهرات	Things made of expensive stones, gold, etc.. that people wear	هي الاشياء المصنوعة من الأحجار الغالية والذهب والتي يرتديها الناس .
Coins	عملات معدنية	Small pieces of metal used as money.	

للفص الثاني الأعداد

الترم الأول

Statues	تماثيل	قطع صغيره من المعدن تستخدم كنفود . Stone or metal objects that have been made to look like a person or animal . أشياء صخرية أو معدنية والتي تصنع على شكل شخص أو إنسان
---------	--------	---

تصريفات هامة

الكلمة وعكسها

Know – knew – known	يعرف	quiet X noisy	هادئ X صاخب
Mean – meant – meant	يقصد	find X lose	يجد X يفقد
Wear – wore – worn	يرتدى	outdoor X indoor	خارج X داخل
Pay – paid – paid	يدفع مال	under X above	تحت X فوق

ادرس هذه الصفات (تعرف على ترتيبها)

Opinion الرأي	Size المقاس	Age العمر	Colour اللون	Nationality الجنسية	Material المادة الخام
Amazing	Long	Historical	Pink	Egyptian	Leather
Exciting	Low	Modern	White	English	Metal
Famous	Medium	Ancient	Black	German	Plastic
Fun	Small	New	Red	French	Wood
Expensive	Tall	Old	Blue	Italian	Cotton
Cheap	big	Young	green	American	rubber

Language Notes

- History (n) مادة التاريخ Historical (adj) تاريخي
EX:- I like studying history. EX:- There are 136,000 historical objects in the museum .
- Keep Safe يحافظ على امن
EX:- People put their money in banks to keep it safe .

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1- Things made of expensive stones , gold, etc, The people wear are called -----
a. dresses b. blouses c. jewellery d.coins
- 2-----are small pieces of metal used as money .
a. stones b. Coins c. Cans d.Bottles
- 3-----are stone or metal objects that have been made to look like a person or metal .
a. Statues b. Coins c. Jewellery d.Museum
- 4-If you go to Luxor, visit the Temple of Karnak. It's very -----
a. interesting b. boring c. strong d.expensive
- 5-Why don't you-----us for some tea ?
a. tell b. go c. give d.come
- 6- It's important to be-----in a library because people need to study .
a. early b. noisy c. late d.quiet
- 7- Farafra is a place in the White-----.
a. Desert b. Island c. land d.City
- 8- The Egyptian Museum -----some very famous objects .
a. contains b. sells c. gives d.makes
- 9- You need -----, to get a drink from that machine .
a. jewellery b. coins c. money d.cars
- 10- There are many beautiful -----in that museum .
a. computers b. cars c. objects d.cans



- 11- The-----building in the town centre is a museum .
a. history b. historical c. quiet d.fun
- 12- Some of the-----in that shop is made of gold .
a. jewellery b. coins c. notebook d.cars
- 13-Most children think it is fun to go-----in the desert , they love seeing the stars at night .
a. swimming b. diving c. camping d.driving
- 14-A-----is usually historical and quiet .
a. desert b. museum c. beach d.tennis competition
- 15- A-----is usually quiet and dry .
a. town centre b. sea c. desert d.playground
- 16- A-----is usually exciting and fun .
a. stone b. library c. desert d.tennis competition
- 17- There are about 136,000-----objects in the museum .
a. modern b. historical c. cheap d.fast
- 18-Our visit to the museum was an amazing-----
a. experiment b. experience c. express d.expert
- 19-I've -----fish by the beach .
a. eat b. eating c. eaten d.ate
- 20- It has -----snowed in my village .
a. every b. ever c. never d.yet
- 21- In Antarctica, the ice has -----melted .
a. every b. ever c. never d.yet
- 22-Has it -----snowed in Cairo .
a. every b. ever c. never d.yet
- 23-Most people go to the Egyptian Museum to see Tutankhamun and his-----
a. friends b. jewellery c. books d.cars
- 24- I bought a -----car ,
a. German,white b. white, German c. German ,new d.German,expensive
- 25-Along time ago, people used gold-----for money
a. walls b. rivers c. museums d.coins
- 26- It's-----to see starts at night .
a. fun b. bun c. fan d.bin
- 27- There are some beautiful-----in the museums' gardens .
a. statues b. clothes c. tourists d.fish
- 28- Museum are places where there are -----
a. foods b. antiquities c. camps d.tents
- 29- The boys really enjoyed -----, in the desert, they spent the whole night in tents .
a. sightseeing b. diving c. camping d. swimming
- 30- The -----building in the town centre is museum .
a. historical b. dirty c. magic d.flying
- 31-There are many beautiful -----in that museum .
a. toys b. dolls c. objects d.subjects
- 32- Most tourists want to see Tutankhamun 's -----
a. dams b. jewellery c. coins d.history



- 33- Works of art made from stone or wood are-----.
- a. notes b. coins c. statues d. books
- 34- Nubia Museum can teach us a lot about the -----and life of the Nubia people .
- a. geography b. history c. maths d. English
- 35- Things made of expensive stones or gold are called-----
- a. shoes b. coins c. clothes d. jewellery
- 36- You can learn-----life in the Western Desert long ago .
- a. in b. at c. for d. about
- 37- In the past, telephones were working with-----inside
- a. notebook b. banknotes c. coins d. calls
- 38- Small pieces of metal used as money are called -----
- a. coins b. museums c. statues d. sculptures
- 39- The Khaega Museum contains notebooks made -----wood .
- a. from b. in c. of d. by
- 40- „ -----„ means things made of expensive stones, gold, etc., that people wear .
- a. Museum b. Temple c. Jewellery d. Money
- 41- You can find a lot of -----and gold objects in the museum .
- a. statues b. seats c. sets d. sides
- 42- That woman is very rich. She is wearing very expensive -----
- a. jewellery b. gold c. coins d. silver
- 43- That is a / an -----of an animal which was made of wood.
- a. object b. seat c. medal d. model
- 44- Money is in the shape of -----or banknotes .
- a. plastic b. notes c. pounds d. coins
- 45- Engineers started-----Aswan Dam in 1902.
- a. build b. built c. building d. to building
- 46- It was the first time in Egypt to -----in 2014 .
- a. rain b. snow c. swim d. blow
- 47- I haven't -----karate before.
- a. made b. gone c. taken d. done
- 48- You need-----to get a drink from that machine .
- a. coins b. banknote c. stones d. jewellery
- 49- There are some beautiful-----in the museum's gardens .
- a. statues b. clothes c. stars d. fish
- 50- The-----building in the town centre is made of gold .
- a. safe b. leather c. young d. historical
- 51- Some of the -----in that shop is made of gold .
- a. stars b. dams c. tents d. jewellery
- 52- The boys really enjoyed-----in the desert. They spent the whole night in tents .
- a. sightseeing b. diving c. camping d. swimming
- 53- When you visit Aswan, You like sailing -----the Nile .
- a. at b. on c. in d. over
- 54- I wrote the telephone number-----to remember it .
- a. down b. up c. on d. under
- 55- We -----a good time at the club every Friday .
- a. take b. see c. contain d. have

56-Bridges are good places-----fishing .

- a. for b. to c. about d.with

57- Tourists go camping to be outside, under the-----

- a. sun b. sky c. moon d.stars

58- The historical objects were moved to the museum to-----them safe.

- a. keep b. contain c. think d.spend

59- Luxor is-----driest place .

- a. A life b. Life c. The life d. living

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

dive	يقوص	drive	يقود	metal	معادن	medal	ميدالية
coin	عملة معدنية	can	عليه صفيح	camp	معسكر	Comp	مشط
piece	قطعه	Peace	السلام				

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - My favourite subjects is historical . (-----)
- 2 - People put their money in banks to keep it save . (-----)
- 3 - Aswan is a small Egyptian popular city . (-----)
- 4 - It's a new English fun book . (-----)
- 5 - We all want to make different things . (-----)
- 6 - What would you like do ? (-----)
- 7 - Have you ever written an e-mail to someone of England ? (-----)
- 8 - The pyramids are long historical, amazing buildings . (-----)
- 9 - Is that what you mean ? That's write . (-----)
- 10 - Have you ever gone driving in the sea ? (-----)
- 11 - The Egyptian Museum contains some very famous subjects . (-----)
- 12 - What places would you like visit ? (-----)
- 13 - Have you ever visit Luxor ? (-----)
- 14 - They has been to London. (-----)
- 15 - Some trips live far from any city (-----)
- 16 - A sculpture is a kind of status . (-----)
- 17 - I'd like to drive in this pure water. (-----)
- 18 - The car is made of medal . (-----)
- 19 - People use cans as money . (-----)
- 20 - There are about 136,000 history objects in the Egyptian Museum (-----)
- 21 - The opposite of indoor is „ outdoors„ . (-----)
- 22 - Engines started building the Aswan Dam in 1902 . (-----)
- 23 - Have you ever sold in the sea ? (-----)
- 24 - There are many popular subjects in the Egyptian Museum. (-----)
- 25 - Which history books have you read ? (-----)
- 26 - There are many beautiful subjects in that museum . (-----)
- 27 - A long time ago , People used gold stones for money . (-----)
- 28 - It's nice to sail under Elephantine Isaland near Aswan. (-----)
- 24 - The children want to jump us for the party . (-----)
- 25 - Could you meet the name again, Please ? (-----)

Language Function

عند طلب توضيح معلومة وإدراكها

عند طلب توضيح معلومه	الرد بعد التوضيح والاستيعاب
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sorry, could you say that again , please ? ممكن تقول ذلك مره ثانيه من فضلك Do you mean? هل تعنى؟ What do you mean ماذا تقصد ؟ Sorry, Can you repeat that , please ممكن تكرر ذلك من فضلك ؟ Is that what you mean ? هل هذا ما تقصد ؟ 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> That's right . هذا صحيح . I see . فهمت - عرفت

1 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Tarek : Have you thought about going to the desert ?

Man : What do you ----- ?

Tarek : Well, you can go to the White Desert. It is very exciting. The best place to visit is -----

Man : Sorry, Can you ----- the name of the place, please ?

Tarek : Farafra, It is a place in the White Desert

Man : I ----- I will write that down .

2-Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Amir is talking to Hazem about a famous writer

Amir : Have you ----- read a book by Charles Dickens? He is an English writer .

Hazem : I don't know. What did ----- ?

Amir : He wrote Oliver Twist .

Hazem : Sorry, Could you say that -----, please ?

Amir : Oliver Twist. It's a film, too .

Hazem : Ok , I think I will ----- this story .

3-Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Sara and Noha are talking about animals

Sara : ----- you ever seen giant animals?

Noha : Yes , I have .

Sara : ----- animals did you see ?

Noha : I ----- the killer whales, Octopuses and sharks .

Sara : ----- did you see them ?

Noha : In the Animal World programme on TV .

4-Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

A teacher tells a student about museums

Teacher : Do you know the importance of museums ?

Student : Yes, I ----- .

Teacher : ----- Are they important?

Student : Because they tell us about the ----- of ancient people.



Teacher : What do they contain ?

Student : Things which are made of-----

5-Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Tamer and Ramy are going to visit the Giza Zoo

Tamer :What about visiting Giza Zoo ?

Ramy : That's a good -----

Tamer : I ----- . We can go next Friday afternoon.

Ramy : Do you-----at about 3 P.m ?

Tamer : That's -----

Ramy : See you .

1-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Dina : Is Elephantine Island a good place for fish ?

Ola : Do you mean you want to go fishing ?

Dina : -----

2-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Salma : You can sail around Elephantine Island .

Woman :Sorry -----?

Salma : Elephantine Island. It's near Aswan. It's very beautiful and quiet .

3-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Walid : Have you ever been fishing or sailed around an island ?

Ahmed : -----

4-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Osama : -----?

Hatem : No, I have never been camping .

5-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ali : Have you ever done karate before ?

Ayman : -----

6-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Boy : I don't want to stay in a hotel. I want to be outside. Under the stars.

Father : You want to go camping. Is it -----?

Boy : That's right. I love camping .

7-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Nabila : I want to relax by the sea .

Doaa : What do you mean ?

Nabila : -----

8-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Hany : -----?

Nabil : I want your dictionary , please .

Hany : That's right.

9-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Samir : Would you like to visit museum ?

Ashraf :

Samir : What would you like to see ?

Ashraf : Statues of famous people .

10-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Noha :

Heba : My favourite tourist sites are museums .

موضوعات هامة Important paragraphs

المتحف المصري The Egyptian Museum

Last week , we visited The Egyptian Museum in Cairo. We loved the big statue of Tutankhamun . My favourite object was the beautiful gold jewellery people wore in those times. It was also interesting to see the money they used . There are about 136.000 historical objects in the museum . The coins were much bigger than they are today, Our visit to the museum was an amazing experience .

الأسبوع الماضي . زرنا المتحف المصري في القاهرة . أعجبنا تمثال توت عنخ آمون . الشيء المفضل لي كان ملابس الناس الجميلة الذهبية التي ارتدوها في هذه الأوقات . وكان من الشيء الجميل ان ترى الأموال التي استخدموها . ويوجد حوالي شيء في المعدن 136.000 شيء في المتحف . العملات المعدنية كانت اكبر من عملات اليوم .

غابة الأمازون The Amazon rainforest

Many people live in the Amazon rainforest. Some tribes live far from any city . They have never left the rainforest . Some of these tribes have never met people from outside the forest . It is an amazing place .

الكثير من الناس يعيشون في غابة الأمازون . بعض القبائل يعيشون بعيدا عن أية مدينة . إنهم لم يتركوا الغابة أبدا . بعض من هذه القبائل لم يقابلوا أبدا أية ناس من خارج الغابة . إنها مكان مدهش .

انتركاتيكيا Antarctica

Antarctica is the coldest place on earth. About 98% of Antarctica is covered with ice. Captain James Cook discovered and explored Antarctica in 1773. Some of the ice has never melted in Antarctica . There is more than 4.500 metres of ice in some places. It's difficult to live there as it's too cold.

انتركاتيكيا أكثر مكان بارد في الأرض . حوالي 98% من انتركاتيكيا مغطاة بالثلج . الكابتن جيمس كوك اكتشف واستكشف انتركاتيكيا في 1773 . بعض من الثلج لم يذوب في انتركاتيكيا . يوجد أكثر من 4.500 متر من الثلج في بعض الأماكن . ومن الصعب أن تعيش هناك لأنها باردة جدا .

متحف الخارجة Kharga Museum

Kharga Museum is the latest museum in Egypt . It contains a lot of statues, coins and other objects. In the Kharga Museum of Antiquities , You can learn about life in the Western Desert long ago . The Kharga Museum contains some famous,, notebooks,, made of wood . It has books written from 360 CE, I want to visit it one day .

متحف الخارجة هو أحدث متحف في مصر . هم يحتوى على الكثير من التماثيل والعملات وأشياء أخرى . في متحف الخارجة آثار قديمة . تستطيع أن تتعلم حول الحياة في الصحراء الغربية منذ فترة طويلة متحف الخارج تحتوى على بعض الكتب والكراسات المشهورة والمصنوعة من الخشب . والمتحف يمتلك كتب مكتوبة من 360 . أريد ان أزورها في يوم ما .

UNIT SEVEN WHAT'S ON TV

LESSONS (1-2)

New Vocabulary

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
programme	برنامج	type	نوع	Quiz show	برنامج مسابقات
TV listings	قوائم برامج	news	اخبار	Documentary	فيلم وثائقي
moment	لحظة	professor	استاذ جامعي	irrigate	يروي
fields	حقول	expect	يتوقع	adult	بالغ
bus stop	محطة اتوبيس	list	قائمة	baby	طفل رضيع

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Tell ... about	يخبر ... عن	Be able to + المصدر	يقدر على + المصدر	Look after	يعتني بـ
What's on TV	ما يعرض في	Least favourite TV programme	برنامج تليفزيوني الأقل تفضيلا	It's amazing to + المصدر	من المدهش أن
other +	اسم جمع	At the moment	في هذه اللحظة	Jump over	يقفز من فوق
another +	اسم مفرد	Around the world	حول العالم	Help with	يساعدني
At Alex university	في جامعة				

الكلمة	معناها
A documentary الفيلم الوثائقي	A programme that tells you interesting information about something. برنامج يخبرك بمعلومات شيقه حول شيء ما .
A nature programme برنامج الطبيعة	A programme that tells you about animals Etc . برنامج يخبرك عن الحيوانات
A quiz show برنامج مسابقات	A programme that asks people what they know. برنامج يسأل الناس ماذا هم يعرفون .
A news programme برنامج اخباري	A programme that tells you information about the world today . برنامج الذي يخبرك بمعلومات حول العالم اليوم .

Students who are studying = students studying

EX:- The competition is between students studying science.

EX:- The student who is studying hard, will get the best mark.

Information (يعاملوا معاملة المفرد) / اخبار / news / معلومات

EX:- All the information was important.

EX:- The news is very exciting .

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- programmes tell you interesting information about something .
a. Documentary b. Nature c. Quiz show d. News
- programmes tell you about animals.
a. Documentary b. Nature c. Quiz show d. News
- , programmes ask people what they know.
a. Documentary b. Nature c. Quiz show d. News
- programmes tell you information about the world today .
a. Documentary b. Nature c. Quiz show d. News
- The bus has just arrived-----the wall .
a. in b. on c. at d. of



- 6- The white horse has jumped -----the wall .
a. in b.on c.at d. over
- 7- I read the television-----to know about the programmes .
a. lasting b.losing c.listing d. menu
- 8- The competition is between students -----science and our students.
a. study b.studying c.studies d. studied
- 9- At 7,00P.m there is a-----, show for university students to find out what they know .
a. programme b.news c.quiz d. nature
- 10- We know information about the world today in a-----programme .
a. news b.vegetables c.animals d. food
- 11- This-----tells us about schools in different countries .
a. nature b.documentary c.match d. test
- 12- Which-----of sports do you like .
a. least b.menu c.list d. test
- 13-There are many TV-----in the coming Ramadan .
a. news b.kinds c.listings d. types
- 14-In Today's-----programme, We'll learn about the animals that live in Brazil .
a. nature b.sky c.earth d. farm
- 15- " Animal World " is my favourite TV-----
a. match b.programme c.subject d. colour
- 16- My sister students at Cairo-----is usually exciting and fun .
a. stone b.library c.desert d. tennis competition
- 17- There are about 136,000-----.She will be a doctor .
a. School b.Museum c.Temple d. University
- 18-Have you started-----Schools Around the World" programme yet?
a. talking b.watching c.giving d. seeing
- 19-Brazil and China are -----
a. countries b.cities c.towns d. areas
- 20- This documentary is about how farmers-----their fields today .
a. destroy b.carry c.irrigate d. hurry
- 21- There is always a strong -----between Al Ahly and El Zamalek teams .
a. competition b.collection c.interest d. programme
- 22-A quiz show, a documentary and nature programme are television-----
a. listeners b.listing c.sets d. menus
- 23-It's very important to look -----animals .
a. for b.with c.after d. before
- 24- What's -----TV tonight? I have time to watch it .
a. in b.on c.at d. for
- 25- A-----, programme tells us interesting information about something.
a. nature b.quiz c.training d. documentary
- 26- Tonight, TV-----Have a quiz, a documentary and nature programme .
a. news b.menus c.listings d. competitions
- 27- I watched a-----programme about animals that live in Brazil last night .
a. news b.quiz c.documentary d. nature



- 28- I went to the cinema to watch the new -----
a. poem b.movie c.song d. channel
- 29- -----gives us information about the world today .
a. Quiz b.News c.Nature programme d. Documentary
- 30- She -----the children playing in the garden .
a. visited b.watched c.gave d. showed
- 31- What's their son ----- Amir .
a. called b.happened c.showed d. visited
- 32- I love these-----of books .
a. fields b.animals c.types d. universities
- 33- A----- show gives questions for university students to find out what they know.
a. quiz b.nature c.water d. theatre
- 34- Do you have any-----about TV listings tonight .
a. money b.time c.drink d. information
- 35-We have seen schools in Brazil and China-----
a. ever b.a;ready c.never d. just
- 36-They have-----shown a school in Dubai .
a. ever b.just c.yet d. ago
- 37- Lamia is only three, so she can't read or write -----
a. never b.ever c.yet d. just
- 38- I amn't going to watch the programme. I've seen it -----
a. just b.yet c.already d. ever
- 39- Ali has been to Aswan, but ha hasn't been to Luxor-----
a. yet b.ever c.already d. never
- 40- The bus has -----..left, I can see it over there .
a. ever b.just c.yet d. did
- 41-The white horse has -----jumped over the wall .
a. ever b.just c.will d. yet
- 42-Hala and Sara haven't played tennis-----
a. never b.yet c.just d. never
- 43- I am not going to study English, I've had two English lessons . -----
a. ever b.ago c.now d. never
- 44- When was the first TV-----Made in Egypt ?
a. T-shirt b.car c.information d. programme
- 45- What's -----TV ?
a. in b.on c.at d. by
- 46- Open your books at -----14 .
a. page b.school c.home d. country
- 47- Do you know the -----To the question .
a. way b.answer c.address d. listings
- 48- He has -----had lunch. It was a short time ago .
a. ever b.already c.just d. yet
- 49- I have had Arabic, but I haven't had maths -----
a. yet b.never c. already d. just

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

list	قائمة أسماء	menu	قائمة طعام	news	أخبار	new	جديد
die	يموت	Dye	يصيغ	camp	معسكر	Comp	مشط

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - It's important to look for animals . (-----)
- 2 - Documentary programme tells how farmers irrigate . (-----)
- 3 - At nine O'clock there is a programme calls Animal World . (-----)
- 4 - This programme is really interested . (-----)
- 5 - My friend is so sad. His father has just dead . (-----)
- 6 - Can you tell us on the new TV programme (-----)
- 7 - I like document programme on TV or the radio . (-----)
- 8 - I love reading newspapers and machines . (-----)
- 9 - The train to Alexandria leaves at ten hour . (-----)
- 10 - We have seen schools in brazil and Chinese already . (-----)
- 11 - I won't watch this film , I have seen it yet . (-----)
- 12 - The train has never left, It started to move a short time ago (-----)
- 13 - My mother hasn't cooked lunch just . (-----)
- 14- Which programme has Dina already watch ? (-----)
- 15 - It's important to look before animals . (-----)
- 16 - Documentary programmes tell us boring information about something(-----).
- 17 - They are winning now. Their answers are wrong . (-----)

STRUCTURES

The present perfect tense with (just , yet or already)

Already بالفعل

تستخدم already مع زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن شيء حدث بالفعل .

- 1 - اما أن تأتي بين (has - have) و P.P .

الفاعل + has / have + Already + P.P

- EX:- He has already had lunch . EX:- He has already eaten .

- 2 - اما أن تأتي آخر الجملة التي زمنها مضارع تام .

الفاعل + has / have + P.P already

- EX:- He has studied English already. EX:- He has drunk tea already.

Just - تها - حالا

تستخدم just في زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن شيء اكتمل حدوثه الآن .

وتأتي بين (has / have) و P.P .

الفاعل + (has / have) + just + P.P

- EX:- He has just English. EX:- He has just drunk tea.

لاحظ أن just في زمن المضارع التام = (a moment ago / a short time ago) في الماضي البسيط .

EX:- He has just eaten . = He ate a moment ago . - He ate a short time ago .

Yet حتى الآن

تستخدم yet في نهاية الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية والتي زمنها مضارع تام مع وجود كلمة not وتستخدم للتعبير عن شيء لم يحدث بعد ويتوقع حدوثه سريعا .



(hasn't / haven't) + P.P... + yet

EX:- He hasn't played football yet.

Has / Have + الفاعل + P.P + yet ?

EX:- Has he written the letter yet ?

No , He hasn't written the letter yet.

1 Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d

- 1- I'm not going to watch that programme. I've seen it -----
a.yet b.just c. yet d.never
- 2- The bus has -----Left . I can see it over there.
a.for b.just c. since d:never
- 3- The programme is about a baby elephant. It's parents have -----died.
a.for b.just c. since d.never
- 4- Mai -----all the dishes yet .
a.has washed b.have washed c. washing d.hasn't washed
- 5- He hasn't finished his homework-----
a.ago b.yet c. for d.since
- 6- Have you done the shopping -----
a.already b.yet c. before d.just
- 7- He-----just washed a film on TV .
a.have b.did c. has d.does
- 8- WE have -----cooked the food ..
a.yet b.ago c. last d.already
- 9- Hatem has been to Alezandria-----, but he hasn't been to Luxor yet .
a.yet b.just c. already d.never
- 10- The White horse has just -----over the wall .
a.jumped b.jumping c. jumps d.jump
- 11- Lamia is only three, So she can't read or write -----..
a.yet b.already c. just d.ever
- 12- I haven't finished writing the letter-----
a.yet b.already c. ever d.just
- 13- We have seen Schools in Brazil and China-----
a.yet b.just c. already d.never
- 14- Have you played the football match -----
a.yet b.tomorrow c. already d.never
- 15- Ali has washed all the dishes -----
a.yet b.just c. already d. never
- 16- They-----20 right answers already .
a.got b.get c. has got d.have got
- 17- I have-----had lunch, That happened a moment ago .
a.yet b.already c. just d.ever
- 18- Have you finished your homework-----?
a.ever b.never c. just d.yet
- 19- We -----the Egyptian team yet .
a.haven't seen b.saw c. had seen d.have seen
- 20- Hatem has been to Alexandria-----but he hasn't been to Luxor..
a.never b.already c. just d.ever



21- I-----a meal a short time ago .

a.eat

b.ate

c. have eaten

d.had eaten

22-My friend's uncle has-----died .

a.just

b.since

c. ago

d.still

23-Nabila has cleaned her house-----

a.just

b.yet

c. already

d.yesterday

24- She has-----done her homework .

a.ever

b.already

c. yet

d.for

25- Has he studied Science.....?

a.ever

b.never

c. yet

d:ago

26- I-----two English lessons already .

a.'ve

b.'ve had

c. 'll have

d.'m having

27- I have just-----to work .

a.drive

b.drove

c. driven

d.driving

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

1 - I have just do my homework .

(-----)

2 - I've have two English lessons already .

(-----)

3 - He has visited London yet .

(-----)

4 - They have yet showed an amazing animal programme on TV (-----)

5 - They have got 20 write answers already .

(-----)

6 - We have seen school in Brazil and China Yet .

(-----)

7 - The baby elephant's parents have yet died .

(-----)

8 - Ali has yet finished his homework .

(-----)

9 - Have you visited your friend just ?

(-----)

10 - The bus has never left, I can see it over there .

(-----)

11 - I haven't had breakfast never .

(-----)

12 - We have a great holiday. We've just arrived home .

(-----)

13 - Amal has finished her homework yet .

(-----)

14 - They have showed an amazing animal programme in TV.(-----)

15 - I've just have lunch .

(-----)

UNIT SEVEN WHAT'S ON TV

LESSONS (3-4)

New Vocabulary

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
comedy	فيلم كوميدي	recommend	يوصى	recommendations	توصيات
channel	قناة	episode	حلقة من مسلسل	funny things	أشياء مضحكة
essay	مقال	thief	لص - حرامي	anyway	على أي حال
almost	تقريبا	lost	مفقود	funny program	برنامج مضحك
opinion	رأي	rainforest	غابة مطيرة	children	أطفال صغار
sound	يبدو	evening news	أخبار المساء	situation	موقف
rather	يفضل	together	معا	change	يغير
accept	يقبل	prefer	يفضل	Give opinion	أعطاء الرأي
refuse	يرفض	am.	صباحا	Pm.	مساء

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

I'd rather + (المصدر)	Around the world	That sounds interesting
On (TV - channel - internet - computer- earth	Laugh at	هذا يبدو ممتعا
	Decide to + (المصدر)	Make + (مفعول + مصدر)

في التلفاز - على القناة - على الننت - على الحاسب On = shown معروض In half an hour في خلال نصف ساعة	Take turns يتبادل الأدوار In an hour في خلال ساعة At quarter to eight ثامنة إلا ربع Quarter of an hour ربع ساعة at all على الإطلاق	Have different opinions about لديهم آراء مختلفة عن What time is the film on? ما موعد الفيلم ؟
--	--	--

LANGUAGE NOTES

يبدو (adj) / صوت شيء / صوت شخص Voice

EX:- I can hear Ali's voice .

أستطيع سماع صوت على .

EX:- I can hear a strange sound .

أستطيع سماع صوت شيء غريب .

EX:- It sounds (exciting - great - boring)

يبدو (مثير - عظيم - ممل) .

المصدر بدون (to) Would rather +

EX:- He would rather drink tea .

EX:- She would rather cook the food .

مصدر بدون (to) + مفعول Make +

EX:- The comedy programme will make you laugh .

قناة مائية / قناة تلفزيونية Canal / Channel

EX:- you can change the channel now .

EX:- The Suez Canal is a great project .

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1- I'm not interested in films. Ithat we watch a quiz show .

a. invite b. recommended c. invent d. discover

2- Theprogramme will make you laugh .

a. comedy b. news c. quiz d. sport

3- I'd rathera film on TV .

a. watched b. watching c. watches d. watch

4- This programme isn't funny, It's

a. boring b. interesting c. exciting d. wonderful

5- Tonight is the lastof the drama, see how it ends .

a. lesson b. term c. episode d. year

6- You can change thenow. I've seen this film already .

a. lesson b. channels c. chapter d. canal

7- Weturns. One week, I choose. The next. My sister chooses .

a. make b. take c. do d. give

8- I laughed a lot. The film is about a very.....man .

a. strong b. active c. clever d. funny

9- I would watch the match on TV .

a. other b. rather c. mother d. brother

10- What time will it be in half an.....?

a. our b. ours c. hour d. tower

11- I'll look at the newspaper to see what'sTV today .

a. in b. on c. of d. at

12-time is it now ?

a. When b. How c. What d. Where

13- I watch Al-Ahli matches on Nile Sport

a. canal b. river c. sea d. channel



- 14-It's quarter -----five .
a. two b. too c.to d.toe
- 15- It's half-----nine .
a. present b. past c.future d.to
- 16- The teacher asked Ali to write a / an -----
a. easy b. essay c.project d.match
- 17- I'm not interested in films. I recommend that we watch a quiz -----
a. grow b. draw c.show d.know
- 18- Episode one of the programme is -----ten past nine tonight.
a. in b. on c.of d.at
- 19-It's a -----programme. It's about the rainforest and the tribes that live there .
a. documentary b. nature c.quiz show d.news
- 20- The Sahara Desert is one of the driest places -----the earth .
a. in b. on c.of d.at
- 21- What -----are the programme on.
a. canal b. channels c.champion d.film
- 22-I -----that we watch the nature programme .
a. wish b. give c.want d.recommend
- 23- Which show makes you laugh?- the -----
a. comedy b. documentary c.quiz d. news
- 24- I arrive at school at-----past ten .
a. have b. half c.to d.too
- 25- I can give you-----For the best books to read .
a. recommendations b. comedies c.documentary d.quizzes
- 26- I watched the film before. It -----boring to see it again.
a. tells b. plays c.sounds d.starts
- 27-A-----of an hour is 15 minutes .
a. quantity b. quiz c.quarter d.quality
- 28- I recommend that you watch -----2 in " Laugh Again " .
a. episode b. type c.grade d.class
- 29-You shouldn't watch that programme, It's really -----
a. interesting b. boring c.amazing d.exciting
- 30- In our English class; Mr Ali asks the students to take -----To answer the question
a. runs b. turns c.hens d.pens
- 31- You will -----at the funny stories in this comedy .
a. cry b. laugh c.tell d.decide
- 32- What-----will the programme start ?
a. time b. kind c.price d.hight
- 33- In the past, there were only two -----on the Egyptian TV .
a. channels b. canals c.stations d.numbers
- 34- This film is boring. I wouldn't-----it to you .
a. mend b. repair c.advise d.recommend
- 35- Why didn't you -----your friend's present ?
a. expect b. accept c.except d.respect
- 36- What's your -----about this programme ?
a. matter b. opinion c.subject d.sports



- 37- This dress is too small. This means that it is -----
a. big b. not big c. not small d. big enough
- 38- In the -----, there are lots of trees .
a. railway station b. countryside c. gas station d. cinema
- 39- Marriotiya Lake is-----Alex and Al Buheira .
a. between b. opposite c. next d. in front
- 40- The train moves at 3:30 from the -----Station .
a. railway b. club c. school d. bus
- 41- The summer -----aren't long enough .
a. shops b. days c. weeks d. holidays
- 42- What's your opinion -----TV programmes .
a. of b. about c. for d. in
- 43- Life is difficult in the desert because there isn't -----water .
a. enough b. too c. but d. and
- 44- Running, swimming and going for a walk are -----
a. sports b. subjects c. colours d. hobbies
- 45- Tonight is the last-----From the programme " Schools around the world "
a. journey b. class c. episode d. channel
- 46- They spent hours watching a -----On television?
a. comedy b. rainforest c. forest d. homework
- 47- This nature programme is about a rainforest and -----live there.
a. journalist b. students c. footballers d. tribes
- 48- -----things make me laugh.
a. Boring b. Funny c. Silly d. Sad
- 49- In class, the students take -----In answering the questions .
a. money b. turns c. photos d. pictures
- 50- You shouldn't watch this film. It isn't funny at -----
a. each b. every c. home d. all
- 51- Would you -----a good hotel to me ?
a. recommend b. advise c. like d. play
- 52- What time is it now? It's half-----one .
a. to b. past c. with d. of
- 53- Please-----me the time .
a. make b. tell c. say d. speak
- 54- Have you -----Your email yet .
a. spoken b. helped c. written d. thought
- 55- In Egypt, We have a lot of -----on all roads.
a. time b. homework c. money d. traffic
- 56- The children are watching cartoon on -----
a. canal b. channel c. line d. station
- 57- That food-----good .
a. makes b. plays c. sounds d. does
- 58- Who would you -----For the job ?
a. make b. recommend c. do d. think
- 59- At -----people are asked what they know.
a. documentary b. nature programme c. quiz show d. news



60-Hager surfed the -----on television .

a. stadium b. channels c.canals d.books

61- What shall we watch-----TV .

a. in b. at c.of d.on

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

Half	نصف	Have	يمتلك	laugh	يضحك	love	يجب
Tribe	قبيله	Trip	رحله قصيره	accept	يقبل	except	ماعدا

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - This comedy always takes me laugh . (-----)
- 2 This show isn't funny in all. It's really boring - . (-----)
- 3 - The match will at quarter too eight . (-----)
- 4 - I recommend that we watching a quiz show. (-----)
- 5 - What time is the film in ? (-----)
- 6 - Hi, Nader, Shall watch television . (-----)
- 7 - I'd rather playing computer games . (-----)
- 8 - Ali has yet finished his homework . (-----)
- 9 - Have you visited your friend just . (-----)
- 10 - All the information were important . (-----)
- 11_ What time will it be in have an hour ? (-----)
- 12 - I left school at have past one (-----)
- 13 - Don't love at your friends . (-----)
- 14_ My uncle was born to a big trip in north Sinai . (-----)
- 15 - Amal will expect Faten's invitation . (-----)
- 16 - What time of things do you like . (-----)
- 17_ I take a different opinion about sports . (-----)
- 18_ Adel Emam's films do me laugh a lot . (-----)
- 19 - To succeed, you should expect different opinions . (-----)
- 20 - That programme is real good . (-----)
- 21_ The match is on canal 2 . (-----)
- 22_ I don't need any more juice because Ahmed has only bought some (-----)
- 23 - I have yet seen that movie so I don't want to see it again (-----)
- 24 - Would you advise me a book to read ? (-----)
- 25_ Cars are made of plastic . (-----)
- 26_ I'll watch programme. It sounds boring. (-----)
- 27 - The bus will leave at 15 minutes. (-----)
- 28_ It's half to eleven . (-----)
- 29_ Can you mend me a programme to watch . (-----)
- 30 - Cairo International studio has seventy five thousand seats. (-----)
- 31_ I'd rather watching a film . (-----)
- 30 - I don't like the sounding oh that . (-----)

Language Function

Giving and asking for recommendations	Responding to recommendations
لتقديم توصيات بعمل شيء نستخدم :-	لقبول التوصية أو الاقتراح نستخدم :-
• Let's + المصدر	• It sounds great / interesting .
• Shall we + المصدر	• I would recommend it .



<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I recommend that + فاعل + فعل + للسؤال عما إذا كان الشخص يفضل الاقتراح أم لا ؟ • Would you recommend it ? why ? why not ? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I like the sound of that . لرفض التوصية أو الاقتراح نستخدم :- • I'd rather + المصدر + المصدر • It sounds boring . • I don't like the sound of that .
---	--

1 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Salma and Jana are discussing what to watch

Salma : There is a film on later, at nine forty-five. The film's called *Lost in the forest*. It ----- Exciting .

Jana : I have seen it already .

Dina : Would you ----- it?

Jana : No , I wouldn't recommend it .

Salma : Why ----- ? What didn't you like about it?

Jana : It wasn't exciting. I thought that it was -----

2 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Hala and Noha are talking about TV programmes

Hala : Shall we watch a film on TV? It is about a thief.

Noha : I don't like the ----- of that, I'd ----- watch the comedy. It starts at half past seven .

Hala : Oh, Is it Laugh With Leon ? I've seen it already .

Noha : Would you ----- it?

Hala : Yes, I laughed a lot . It's about a very funny man . .

Noha : Ok, Let's watch that then . It sounds good .

3 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Khaled suggests watching television

Khaled : Hi, Nader. Let's watch television .

Nader : I will look at the newspaper to see what's on TV today. Ok, I ----- that we watch the film .

Khaled : I don't like John Bond, I'd ----- watch the comedy .

Nader : I wouldn't recommend it, Mr Medhat is not always very -----

Khaled : No, you are right. Shall we watch the documentary ? It sounds interesting.

Nader : Yes, I like the ----- of that, It starts at seven o'clock .

4 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Salma and Noha are going to watch a film on Tv

Salma : Let's watch TV , Noha .

Noha : What ----- of films do you recommend ?

Salma : I recommend a ----- one .

Noha : All right. ----- is the hero of that film ?

Salma : It's Adel Emam .

Noha : It ----- interesting .



1-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Sanaa : What time will it be in half an hour ?

Walaa :

=====

2-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Toka : ?

Salma : Yes, that sounds interesting .

=====

3-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Maha : I recommend that we watch a quiz show ?

Fatma :

=====

4-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Toka : Quqrter past eight was an hour ago. What time is it now?

Salma :

=====

5-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Zaki : Let's watch the film .

Hussen :

=====

6-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Noura : ?

Shaimaa : It sounds interesting .

=====

7-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Nada : Do you like documentary ?

Dina :

Nada : Why ?

Dina : I think they are boring .

=====

موضوعات هامة Important Paragraphs

" My favourite TV programme " البرنامج المفضل لدى

My favourite programme is nature programme . It's about the animals that live in the Sahara desert . It's one of the driest places on earth. But many animals live there . Episode 1 of the programme is at ten past nine tonight . Episode 2 is next week . I like it very much .

برنامجي المفضل هو برنامج الطبيعة . هو عن الحيوانات التي تعيش في الصحراء . هي واحدة من أجف الأماكن على الكرة الأرضية . لكن الكثير من الحيوانات يعيشون هناك . والحلقة الأولى من البرنامج الساعة التاسعة وعشرة دقائق الليلة . والحلقة الثانية الأسبوع القادم . وان أحب هذا البرنامج كثيرا جدا .

فيلم وثائقي تحبه " A documentary you like "

There is a really good documentary on television . It's called " It's Our World " It's about how people live in different countries. This week's programme is about school in England . I would recommend this programme because you can learn a lot . You can see it at 9 p.m .

يوجد برنامج وثائقي جيد في التلفاز . يسمى (انه عالمنا) أنه عن كيف الناس يعيشون في دول مختلفة . هذا الأسبوع البرنامج عن المدرسة في إنجلترا . أنا أوصي بهذا البرنامج لأنك تستطيع أن تتعلم الكثير . ويمكنك أن تراه الساعة التاسعة مساء .

البرنامج المفضل لدى " My favourite TV programme "

" Animal World " is my favourite TV programme. The programme starts at 2 p.m every Friday. It gives me much information about different animals. I can also see some animals from different countries . I can see the programme another time on Tuesday . These programmes are very useful .

برنامج عالم الحيوان هو البرنامج المفضل عندي . البرنامج يبدأ الساعة الثانية كل يوم . البرنامج يمدنا بالكثير من المعلومات عن الحيوانات المختلفة . أستطيع أيضا أن أرى بعض الحيوانات من دول مختلفة . أستطيع أن أرى البرنامج في وقت آخر يوم الثلاثاء . فهذه البرامج مفيدة جدا .

The kinds of books you recommend to your friend and why

أنواع الكتب المختلفة التي توصي بها لصديقك ولماذا ؟

I recommend you to read history books. History books are very useful . They give us much information about different periods . Also, You can know some information about famous kings and queens. These kinds of books are common in libraries . Also, You can use the internet.

أوصيك أن تقرأ كتب التاريخ . كتب التاريخ مفيدة جدا . فهذه الكتب تزودنا (تعطينا) بالكثير من المعلومات عن فترات (أزمنة) مختلفة . وأيضا تستطيع أن تعرف بعض المعلومات عن الملوك والملكات المشهورين . وهذه الأنواع من الكتب شائعة في المكتبات وأيضا تستطيع أن تستخدم الانترنت .

أفلام الكوميديا Comedy

Comedy is my favourite . I like it very much. It makes me laugh. There are many comedy stars but my favourite one is Henedy . I enjoy watching his films. It's fun .

أفلام الكوميديا هي المفضلة لي . أحبها كثيرا جدا . هي تجعلني أضحك . ويوجد الكثير من نجوم الكوميديا لكن المفضل لي هو هندي . أستمتع بمشاهدة أفلامه . انه مضحك .

www.khawagah.blogspot.com



مدونة خواجه

ترحب بكم

وتتمنى لكم أحلى الأوقات

كل عام وأنتم بخير

UNIT EIGHT IN THE NEWS

LESSONS (1-2)

New Vocabulary

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
fire	نار - حريق	during	أثناء	storm	عاصفه
smoke	دخان	nobody	لا أحد	firefighters	رجال الاطفاء
brave	شجاع	suddenly	فجأة	rescue = save	ينقذ
coward	جبان	accident	حادثة	news report	تقرير اخبارى
recent	حديث - عصى	windy	عاصف	put out	يطفىء
weather	الطقس	beginning	بداية	burn- burnt	يحرق - يحترق
wait	ينتظر	last	يستمر - يوم	starting point	نقطة البداية
teach	يدرس	empty	فارغ	event	حدث
learn	يتعلم	full	ممتلئ	no body	لا أحد
village	قرية				

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

In the news	في الاخبار	In A small boat	في قارب صغير	A fire at a house	حريق بالمنزل
jump into	يقفز فى	Rescue From	ينقذ من	save...from	ينقذ من
Phone 180 for help	يتصل ب 180 من أجل المساعدة	Jump over	يقفز من فوق
Come from	يأتى من	At the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	Put out	يطفىء الحريق
By the sea	بجوار البحر	Around the world	حول العالم	earlier today	فى وقت مبكر اليوم
		Fall into the water	يقع فى الماء	Stop fire	يطفىء النار
		Turned grey	تحول اللون الرمادى		

الكلمة	معناها
Put out	يطفىء
During	أثناء
Firefighter	رجل المطفأ
Rescue	ينقذ
Smoke	دخان
To stop fire burning	يوقف الحريق
Happening from the beginning to the end	حدثت شىء من البداية الى النهاية
Some one who stops fires	رجل المطفأ الذى يطفىء النار
To save a person from some thing dangerous	ينقذ شخص من شىء ما خطير
This goes into the air when something burns	هذا يدخل الهواء عندما يحترق شىء

During + noun or v + ing

EX:- During the storm, Two men fell into the water .

EX:- During eating I drank some water .

Turned + (صفة) / it became + (صفة)

EX:- The sky turned grey .

EX:- The sky became grey .

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1- -----is to save a person from something dangerous .

- a. Put out b. Rescue c. Kill d. Burn

2-A-----is someone who stops fires .

- a. professor b. receptionist c. firefighter d. scientist

3-When something burns, ----- goes into the air.

- a. smoke b. water c. ice d. snow

4- To stop a fire burning is to -----it .

- a. get out b. look out c. run out d. put out



- 5- The child is -----He isn't afraid of staying alone in the darkness .
a. ill b.brave c. clever d.lazy
- 6- When Ali saw smoke coming out of the window, He phoned 180 -----help .
a. in b.on c. at d.for
- 7- During the bad-----the sky turned grey and it became very windy .
a. storm b.water c. report d.firefighter
- 8- A -----is someone who lives next door to you .
a. firefighter b.policeman c. professor d.neighbor
- 9- The job of the-----, is very dangerous as they work with fire.
a. machanics b.firefighters c. fighters d.soliders
- 10- A bus had an accident, but the policeman could-----all the passengers.
a. rescue b.take c. kill d.see
- 11- she saw some-----coming out of the kitchen, So she cried for help .
a. smoke b.rain c. air d.wind
- 12- I knocked at the door but-----answered .
a. nobody b.nothing c.nowhere d.notime
- 13-The reporter wrote two good news-----
a. buckets b.paper c. newspaper d.reports
- 14- The police man was-----enough to catch all the thives with their guns.
a. afraid b.brave c. weak d.coward
- 15- We phoned the firemen to come and put-----
a. in b.to c. out d.from
- 16- The sky-----grey and it became very windy .
a. collected b.turned c. read d.had
- 17- That is the-----,where I was born .
a. time b.area c. space d.period
- 18-The news reporter always looks for-----news.
a. ancient b.recent c. late d.old
- 19-Mr Ali was walking -----the sea when the accident happened.
a. on b.with c. by d.in
- 20- Smoke was-----from the window .
a. jumping b.giving c. coming d.taking
- 21- The person living next door is my -----
a. thief b.neighbor c. sailor d.firefighter
- 22-The-----caused the building to fall down.
a. storm b.smoke c. time d.holiday
- 23- -----have been at the building for two hours. They put out the fire.
a. teachers b.Firefighters c. Doctors d.swimmers
- 24- I was walking down the street, -----I fell down .
a. lately b.so c. sudden d.suddenly
- 25- The-----has been empty since last year.
a. building b.build c. builder d.built
- 26- The weather was good but suddenly it-----
a. travelled b.changed c. moved d.drove
- 27- A brave man-----into the sea and rescued the child .
a. drowned b.fished c. hunted d.jumped



- 28- During the storm, the sky-----grey and windy.
a. coloured b.turned c. took d.came
- 29- We don't know how the fire-----
a. broke b.rescued c. started d.fell
- 30- a/An -----is someone who stops fires .
a. firefighter b.engineer c. policeman d.reporter
- 31- Sara has waited -----the bus for 20 minutes.
a. to b.for c. with d.about
- 32- -----means to save a person from something dangerous.
a. Rescue b.Stop c. Turn d.Burn
- 33- Most people listen to the news-----to know what's happening .
a. accidents b.phones c. reports d.areas
- 34- A neighbor saw a fire -----and called for help.
a. starting b.starts c. started d.to start
- 35- No body -----who killed the old woman .
a. know b.knows c. knowing d.to know
- 36- I don't get out when the weather-----
a. turns b.falls c. changes d.fails
- 37- A big tree-----, into the river during the storm .
a. failed b.felt c.fell d.fall
- 38- the firefighter too; 8 hours to put -----the fire .
a. out b.off c. with d.in
- 39- The news that you tell me-----me happy .
a. makes b.make c. to make d.making
- 40- I have never met-----a tall man .
a. so b.line c. as d.such
- 41-How-----do you watch the news ? I usually watch it .
a. long b.many c. often d.much
- 42- Firefighters are always -----men.
a. dangerous b.brave c. safe d.cowardly
- 43- I need some water, the glass is -----
a. empty b.free c. full d.busy
- 44- Ali-----work at ten o'clock .
a. fell b.happened c. rescued d.started
- 45- Ali hasn't used a camera since he bought a -----Last year .
a. car b.laptop c. mobile phone d.washing machine
- 46- The little boy fell when he was walking -----the sea.
a. by b.in c. over d.under

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

list	قائمة أسماء	last	يستمر - يوم	save	ينقذ	safe	امن
wait	ينتظر	weight	وزن	fall	يسقط	feel	يشعر
Nobody	ولا واحد	no thing	ولا شيء				

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - No person means nothing . (-----)
- 2 - I saw a man walking buy the sea . (-----)
- 3 - The man saved the boy of the fire . (-----)
- 4 - The ship sank when it got into a big star . (-----)
- 5 - I slept when the film . (-----)
- 6 - Two men fell into the water while the storm . (-----)
- 7 - Restore is to save a person from something dangerous . (-----)
- 8 - I'm waiting to the bus at the bus stop . (-----)
- 9 - Nothing means no person . (-----)
- 10 - Farmers enjoy clean air in the city . (-----)
- 11 - Have you read the latest news port . (-----)
- 12 - That's the classmate who lives next door to me . (-----)
- 13 - How often have you been a teacher? For 10 years . (-----)
- 14 - The sky changed grey and it became very windy . (-----)
- 15 - Smoking was coming from the window . (-----)
- 16 - put up means to stop fire burning . (-----)
- 17 - The firefighter was able of stop the fire alone . (-----)
- 18 - My brother joined the school football group . (-----)
- 19 - Ships don't sail easily during a star . (-----)

STRUCTURES

The present perfect tense with (for or since)

For لمدة

تستخدم for مع زمن المضارع التام لتدل على فتره زمنية تمتد للوقت الحاضر وغير محدد بدايتها .

Has

الفاعل + P.P ... For + (days – along time – weeks - months
Years – centuries – long – the last – hours)

Have

- EX:- He has had lunch for 3 hours . EX:- He has eaten for along time .

since منذ

تستخدم since في زمن المضارع التام لتدل على فتره زمنية معروف وقت بدايتها ومستمره .

Has

الفاعل + P.P ... + since + (بداية زمن الحدث) (last – yesterday – then
جملة ماضى بسيط – تصريف ثانى)

Have

- EX:- He has studied English since 2001 .
- EX:- He has studied English since he was eight years old .

س / ما هو الفرق بين الماضى البسيط والمضارع التام ؟

- يعبر الماضى البسيط عن حدث تم فى الماضى وفى وقت محدد وانتهى .
- يعبر المضارع التام عن حدث وقع فى الماضى وى يزال أثره موجود فى الوقت الحاضر .

EX:- Ali has lived in England for ten years .

EX:- He moved there in 2006 .

- اذا تم تحديد الوقت فى الماضى باستخدام (in – time) فاننا نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط .

EX:- He has lived in England for ten years, He moved there in 2006 .



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1- The building has been empty -----may
a. since b. just c. yet d. for
- 2- Firefighters have been at the building -----More than four hours.
a. since b. just c. yet d. for
- 3- My uncle has lived in England for ten years, He -----There in 2006.
a. has moved b. moving c. moves d. moved
- 4- It's been a few weeks -----I met you .
a. since b. just c. yet d. for
- 5- Ayman hasn't seen his grandma-----along time.
a. ago b. yet c. for d. since
- 6- He hasn't gone to school -----ten days
a. already b. yet c. since d. for
- 7- I have lived in Giza-----
a. ago b. yet c. for d. since
- 8- He has been in Alexandria -----a month
a. since b. for c. in d. already
- 9- Hatem has lived in the area -----43 years .
a. since b. just c. already d. for
- 10- I haven't seen such a bad storm -----I was a little boy .
a. since b. just c. already d. for
- 11- Firefighters haven't been able to put -----the fire yet
a. in b. on c. out d. of
- 12- The brave man jumped-----the sea and saved the young boy
a. on b. into c. at d. of
- 13- How often do you-----the news on TV ?
a. buy b. watch c. run d. speak
- 14- What is the news -----about ?
a. port b. airport c. report d. part
- 15- Sami -----his friend Nabil since 2014.
a. didn't see b. hasn't seen c. haven't seen d. doesn't see
- 16- I have been here-----5 o'clock .
a. since b. just c. for d. already
- 17- The building has been empty-----may .
a. yet b. for c. just d. since
- 18- My father has worked for our local company-----four years.
a. yet b. for c. just d. since
- 19- I -----in Tanta for a month .
a. lived b. living c. had lived d. have lived
- 20- Have you been at this school-----Along time .
a. since b. already c. just d. for
- 21- He has lived in this area-----30 years .
a. since b. already c. just d. for
- 22- My family has lived in Aswan since-----
a. 2008 b. twenty years c. ages d. a long time



- 23- Ali-----into England in 2006.
a. moves b. moved c. has moved d. moving
- 24- I haven't seen such a bad storm-----I was a boy.
a. since b. already c. just d. for
- 25- Ali started writing at 10. It's now 12. So, He-----for two hours.
a. wrote b. has written c. writes d. is writing
- 26- My sister hasn't played games since she-----to her new school.
a. comes b. came c. has come d. had come
- 27- I have just-----to work.
a. drive b. drove c. driven d. driving
- 28- The building has been empty-----may
a. since b. for c. never d. just
- 29- Firefighters have been at the building -----More than four hours.
a. since b. for c. already d. yet
- 30- Mr Ali has lived in the area -----30 years.
a. since b. for c. never d. just
- 31- Ali has had his phone-----the beginning of this year.
a. since b. for c. already d. yet
- 32- Mona has lived with her grandparents-----Two years.
a. since b. for c. ever d. yet
- 33- I -----some jewellery in the street yesterday.
a. find b. have found c. found d. am finding
- 34- Ali has had that computer -----five years.
a. since b. for c. already d. just
- 35- I haven't gone to the beach-----I was in Alexandria.
a. since b. for c. never d. just
- 36- I have been at this school -----last year.
a. since b. for c. ever d. never
- 37- I've studied English-----I was eight years old.
a. since b. for c. already d. just
- 38- Have you lived in this village-----, a long time ?
a. since b. for c. ever d. never
- 39- There hasn't been a storm here -----2001.
a. since b. for c. ever d. just
- 40- Sara has waited for a bus-----, 20 minutes longer than yesterday.
a. since b. for c. just d. never

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - I have haven't played tennis for last October . (-----)
- 2 - He has been in primary school since four years . (-----)
- 3 - I haven't study English since last week . (-----)
- 4 - I haven't met Ali just we were at school (-----)
- 5 - He has been ill since two weeks . (-----)
- 6 - Alaa has watched TV since 2 hours . (-----)
- 7 - I've studied English since five years . (-----)
- 8 - She taught at this school for 3 years . (-----)
- 9 - A have waited for the bus since I have left home. (-----)

- 10 - I haven't seen my grandparents since a long time . (-----)
- 11 - Ali has been a policeman for 2001 . (-----)
- 12 - We have a great holiday. We've just arrived home . (-----)
- 13 - Amal has finished her homework yet . (-----)
- 14 - They have showed an amazing animal programme in TV. (-----)
- 15 - Have you lived in this village since a long time . (-----)
- 16 - Sara has wanted to be a doctor for she was seven years old . (-----)
- 17 - Mona has finished homework for 9 o'clock . (-----)
- 18 - She has lived in her house since ten years. (-----)
- 19 - The football team have played in the stadium for 2012 (-----)
- 20 - Ali hasn't used a camera for he left school in 1984 . (-----)

IN THE NEWS

LESSONS (3-4)

New Vocabulary

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
storm	عاصفه	flood	فيضان	medal	ميداليه
ladder	سلم خشبي	seat	كرسى ثابت	swimming pool	حمام سباحه
ankle	كاحل القدم	swimmer	سباح	believe	يعتقد
suddenly	فجاءه	family news	اخبار العائله	belong to	يخص - ينتمى لـ
last	يستمر	discuss	يناقش	sports club	نادى رياضى
dry	جاف	upstairs	الدور العلوى	sports centre	مركز رياضى
invite	يدعو	truly	حقيقه	drown	يغرق للاشخاص
carefully	بحرص	earthquake	زلزال	sink	يغرق للاشياء
rain	تمطر	cry	يبكى	upstairs	الدور العلوى
climb up	يصعد	dry	جاف	downstairs	الدور السفلى
climb down	ينزل	wet	مبتل	pleased	مسرور
carefully	بعنايه	careless	باهمال	sad	حزين
close	يغلق	kind	عطوف	true	حقيقى
open	يفتح	unkind	غير عطوف	untrue	غير حقيقى

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامه

Try to find	يحاول أن يجد	For along time	لمده طويله	Pleased to +	المصدر
belong to	يخص - ينتمى الى	At the sports club	فى النادى	Is it true that...?	هل صحيح
Hear about	يسمع عن	Came first in a		Climb up the ladder	
A brave 13-year-old boy	ولد شجاع عمره ثلاثه عشر عاما	competition	حصل على المركز الاول فى مسابقه	Fall over	يسقط على
Hear about/of	يسمع عن	At their home	فى منزلهم	Fall in	يسقط فى
Go for a walk	يذهب للمشى	Wait for	ينتظر		
		Invite.... To	يدعو.... الى		

LANGUAGE NOTES

ولد عمره 13 سنه - 13 - year - old boy

EX:- A brave 13 - year - old boy , Ali has got a medal.

هنا السن يعتبر صفة للولد والصفة لا تجمع لذلك لم تضيف حرف ال s الى كلمة year

got a medal for + V + ing حصل على ميداليه لـ

EX:- He has got a medal for rescuing a child from a swimming pool .

تتكون كثير من الصفات من أفعال مضافا لها (ed) أو (ing)

الصفة المنتهيه ب (ed) تصف المشاعر (أى من وقعت عليه الصفة وغالبا ما يكون الشخص)

EX:- I am interested in history. EX:- He is excited about the match.

الصفة المنتهيه ب (ing) تصف المتسبب فى هذا الشعور (وغالبا ما يكون الشيىء) .



EX:- History is a very interesting subject .

EX:- This football match is exciting .

(ed)	بعض الصفات المنتهية ب	(ing)	بعض الصفات المنتهية ب
Interested	مهتم	Interesting	شيق
Excited	مثار - منفعل	Exciting	مثير
Surprised	مدهش	Surprising	مدهش
Bored	شاعر بالملل	Boring	ممل - يزهق

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- It rained for two hours during the
a.cloud b.sink c. storm d.earthquake
- The house is tall, so you need ato clean the windows.
a.ladder b.river c. lake d.fire
- The teacher came into the room andall the children were quiet.
a.suddenly b.carefully c. quick d.truly
- That car only has three legs, Don't sit on it or it will
a.sit down b.go over c. fall over d.get up
- The famous swimmerprizes to some young swimmers .
a.gave b.took c. swam d.won
- The police are trying to find whose the bag belongs
a.at b.from c. too d.to
- He camein a competition, He is a good swimmer .
a.one b.first c. last d.two
- Ali has got afor rescuing a child from a swimming .
a.model b.metal c. mental d.medal
- The boy has....., the tree to get his football .
a.climbed b.climb c. climbing d.climbs
- Is it.....that there was an earthquake in India yesterday. ?
a.easy b.true c. difficult d.brave
- There are two books here, Which oneto you .
a.is b.belongs c. gives d.takes
- Did I.....you what haooened in the desert last week ?
a.told b.tells c. tell d.telling
- Theythat they walked for eight hours. .
a.heard b.say c. tell d.speak
- There was an earthquake in India yesterday, But I.....that no body was hurt .
a.tell b.belong c. right d.believe
- My mother was.....for a bus when he saw a bag on the seat next to him .
a.reading b.writing c. waiting d.speaking
- The.....little girl didn't cry when she hurt her arm .
a.bored b.ancient c. brave d.coward
- This new book is very
a.interested b.interesting c. excited d.bored
- I'm neverWhen I watch the news .
a.interesting b.bored c. boring d.exciting
- Ali isn'tHe is brave .
a.clever b.coward c. naughty d.fast



- 20- Ayman hasn't seen his grandma -----a long time .
a.since b.for c. yet d. ever
- 21- Samy has been in bed -----a week.
a.since b.for c. yet d. ever
- 22-Heba has been ill -----last week .
a.since b.for c. yet d. ever
- 23- My uncle -----in Aswan since 2002 .
a.live b.living c. lived d. has lived
- 24- Which camera-----to Salma .
a.belongs b.takes c. gives d.makes
- 25- As he is short, He needs a -----to put the book on that high shelf .
a.stair b.tractor c. bicycle d.ladder
- 26- The boy -----the tree to get his football.
a.went b.climbed c. rescued d. ate
- 27-The underground was crowded with people, So I didn't find any -----to sit down .
a.mat b.chair c. seat d. wheelchair
- 28- Rania Elwany was a great -----
a.carpenter b.engineer c. doctor d.swimmer
- 29-Our family holds a meeting every Thursday to-----our problems.
a.drive b.eat c. discuss d.kill
- 30- There was a terrible -----In most African countries because of the heavy rain.
a.flood b.earthquake c. storm d.drought
- 31- Tamer-----a small boy from the flood .
a.pushed b.put c. brought d.rescued
- 32- A brave man rescued the child but the child wasn't-----
a.hurt b.pulled c. booked d.gone
- 33- My brother-----me to have dinner in a good restaurant .
a.invited b.invented c. attended d.served
- 34- I usually spend my free time in a swimming-----
a.doll b.pool c. hall d.ball
- 35- I looked-----the window and saw two men fighting in the street.
a.in b.into c. out of d.about to
- 36- The-----little girl didn't cry when she hurt her arm.
a.bored b.ancient c. brave d.dangerous
- 37- I've read a news -----
a.reporter b.report c. radio d.TV
- 38- The house is tall, so you need a -----to clean the windows .
a.ladder b.river c. lake d.fire
- 39- Firefighters climbed-----a ladder to rescue the people .
a.at b.to c. of d.up
- 40- The chair only has three legs, Don't sit on it or it will -----
a.go down b.go over c. fall over d.get up
- 41- A famous swimmer -----prizes at the sports centre .
a.gave b.played c. made d.got
- 42- My brother saw a bag-----a seat at a bus stop .
a.in b.of c. on d.to



- 43- The police don't know who the bag -----Last year .
a.belongs b.tells c. finds d.gives
- 44- The house is tall, So you need a -----to clean the windows .
a.leader b.river c. ladder d.fire
- 45- Have you ever heard -----Charles Dickens .
a.on b.at c. about d.over
- 46- I visited my frien who-----his ankle in the hospital .
a.save b.won c. got d.broke
- 47- Don't forget, Mohamed Salah is -----, the news at 7 o'clock .
a.on b.from c. in d.at
- 48- I'll -----my friends to my birthday party .
a.hear b.invite c. invent d.hurt
- 49- Tamer-----first in the competition .
a.got b.have c. drove d.came
- 50- I have never met-----a tall man .
a.so b.line c. as d.such
- 51- The boy-----the tree to get his football .
a.climbed b.rescued c. went d.ate
- 52- It rained for two hours during the -----
a.cloud b.sink c. storm d.earthquake
- 53- There are two books here, Which one -----to you .
a.is b.belongs c. gives d.goes
- 54- The new book is very-----.
a.interesting b.excited c. bored d.interested
- 55- The children were very -----To play in the park .
a.exciting b.boring c. excited d.interesting
- 56- Ali likes the sea very much, He is a -----
a.driver b.swimmer c. tour guide d.farmer
- 57- He told me a lot of -----about the accident .
a.information b.headlines c. competition d.reports
- 58- I couldn't stand on my feet during the-----
a.exam b.meal c. picnic d.earthquake
- 59- Rescue means to save someone from something -----
a.safe b.nice c. dangerous d.clean
- 60- Ali won a / an -----in the writing competition .
a.prize b.ladder c. newspaper d.ankle

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

seat	مقعد ثابت	sit	يجلس	ladder	سلم ثابت	leader	قائد
invite	يدعو	invent	يخترع	rain	تمطر	run	يجرى

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - A brave 13-years-old girl, Faten, rescued a child . (-----)
- 2 - My sister won a prize for write an English poem . (-----)
- 3 - There are twenty sits in the class . (-----)
- 4 - I used the leader to climb the tree. (-----)
- 5 - I'd like to invent you to my birthday party. (-----)
- 6 - It's running heavily. I can't go out . (-----)



- 7 - The police doesn't know who the bag belongs to . (-----)
- 8 - Have you listened what happened to my brother on Saturday ?.(-----) .
- 9 - I didn't no that Tell me more . (-----)
- 10 - A drought happens when there's too much rain. (-----)
- 11 - He is stayed in Alexandria since 1995. (-----)
- 12 - Yes, He came first in a competition.He's a very good swimming(-----)
- 13 - He was very unkind, He gave them food and drink (-----)
- 14 - Oh, not, Tell me most . (-----)
- 15 -The tennis match was very excited . (-----)
- 16 - How much have you been in Cairo ? (-----)
- 17 - He has been in primary school since three years . (-----)
- 18 - I stayed in Paris for two weeks . (-----)
- 19 - I've never boring when I watched the news (-----)
- 20 - The dangerous little girl didn't cry when she hurt her arm(-----)
- 21 - The teacher came into the room and sudden allthe children were quiet(---)
- 22 - I read the backlines of the newspaper first (-----)
- 23 - We have missed the proplem for eight hours . (-----)
- 24 - Everyone in the class have a book . (-----)
- 25 - There was a fire and I saw prize coming from the window.(-----)
- 26 - I listen about the radio every night . (-----)
- 27 - I invented Ali to my birthday party . (-----)
- 28 - Adel hit his head and it cuts . (-----)

=====

Talking about the news عند التحدث عن الاخبار نستخدم :-	Responding to news للرد عند سماع الاخبار نستخدم :-
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have you heard what happened to....? هل سمعت ماذا حدث الى.....؟ Did I tell you about? هل أخبرتك عن I believe that أنا اعتقد أن Is it true that هل حقيقى أن They say هم يقولون 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I didn't know . أنا لا أعرف I heard about that . أنا سمعت عن ذلك . Tell me more . أخبرنى أكثر

1 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Salma is telling Jana the news

Salma :Have you -----what happened to my brother on Saturday? He found a lot of money in the street .

Jana : I didn't know that. -----me more .

Dina : Well, he was waiting -----a bus when he saw a bag on the seat next to him. Inside the bag, tgere was a lot of money .

Jana : What did he do ?

Salma : He took it to the ----- of course. .

Jana :That's a great .



2 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Adel and Tarek are talking about the swimming competition

Adel :Hello , Tarek .

Tarek : Hello , Adel .

Adel : Did I -----you about what happened at the sports club last weekend? A famous swimmer was there .

Tarek : Yes, I -----about that, I believe he gave prizes to some young swimmers .

Adel : Is it -----that Omar won a prize, too

Tarek :Yes, he-----first in a competition. He is a very good swimmer .

3 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Hesham meets a tourist

Hesham :What's your job please , Mr Smith ?

Mr Smith : I 'm a doctor .

Hesham : -----have you been in Egypt ?

Mr Smit : I have been here ----- two weeks .

Hesham : How long have you -----in Cairo ?

Mr Smith : -----Saturday. I arrived two days ago .

4 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Walid and Mohamed are talking about a fire damaged a building.

Walid :Have you heard about yesterday's fire ?

Mohamed : Yes, I watched the -----about it on TV.

Walid : -----has it made into the building .

Mohamed : It damaged it.

Walid : Haven't the people phoned the-----to put it out .

Mohamed :Theyhave phoned them but they arrived-----.

5 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Ahmed and Nada are talking about a fire near Ramsis Square.

Ahmed :What happened ?

Nada : A -----Ramsis Square broke out .

Ahmed : -----did it happen .

Nada : Yesterday.

Ahmed : Was there anyone----- ?

Nada :No, The good-----is that the building has been empty for Allah .

6 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Two tourists were lost.

Ahmed :Did I tell you what happened in the desert last week ?

Nada : No, -----didn't .

Ahmed : Two tourists-----to go for a walk .

Nada : Tell me-----

Ahmed : They say that they walked for eight hours . They didn't know where they were.

Nada :Yes, I remember now , I -----about that on the news.



1-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Sanaa : Have you heard about the fire ?

Walaa :

Sanaa : I believe nobody was in the building .

2-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Toka :-what happened in the desert last week ?

Salma : No, You didn't .

Toka : Two tourists decided to go for a walk .

3-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Maha : Did I tell you about what happened to me yesterday? I found some jewelry in the street .

Fatma :What did you do with it ?

Maha : I gave it to the police. They say that it belongs to Mrs Faten/

4-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Toka :?

Salma : No, ell me more .

Toka : Faten had an accident, She was playing football when he fell over.

5-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Kareem : Who are the people putting out fire ?

His father :

Kareem : Are they brave ?

His father :Yes , of course .

6-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Hend : ?

Omnia : Because a young child fell into the river .

Hend : Was he rescued ?

Omnia :Yes , at the last time .

7-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ali : Who rescued the child ?

Kareem :

Ali : Did he take money ?

Kareem : No, He refused to take any money .

8-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

A man : ?

policeman : Yes, It was very big but they have been able to put it out .

A man : Thanks for Allah .

9-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ali : Did I tell you what happened to my friend Nabil ?

Kareem :

Ali : He had an accident and he is in the hospital now .

10-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

- A : ?
B : Yes, It's true. He lost his mobile phone .

موضوعات هامة Important paragraphs

حريق في المنزل A fire at a house

There has been a fire at a house in the village. Smoke was coming from a window . A neighbor phoned 180 for help . No body was in it , Firefghters came to put out the fire .

كان يوجد حريق في منزل في القرية . الدخان كان يأتي من الشباك . الجار اتصل برقم 180 لطلب المساعدة . ولا واحد كان فيها . رجال الاطفاء أتوا لكي يطفئوا النار .

ما فعلته اليوم What you have done today

I have had a busy day. I have been to school. When I came back, I have done my homework . After that, I played computr games with my brother. We had fun.

يومي كان مشغول . أنا ذهبت الى المدرسة ورجعت . وعندما رجعت أنا عملت واجبي . وبعد ذلك لعبت الالعب على الحاسب مع اخي . وقد تمتعنا بذلك .

حادثة رأيتها في طريقك للبيت An accident you saw on your way home

Yesterday, I saw a bad accident in the street . A bus hit a small car. Three people were injured . I used my mobile to call for help . The ambulance took tham to hospital. I felt so sorry for them .

أمس رأيت حادثه في الشارع . اتوبيس صدم سياره صغيره . وثلاثة من الناس اصابوا . استخدمت هاتفي لكي أطلب المساعدة . سيارة الاسعاف أخذتهم الى المستشفى . شعرت بالحزن تجاههم .

جائزه حصلت عليها في المنافسه - المسابقه A prize you got in a competition

Last week, I won a prize for running. I could run three kilometers in thirteen minutes. I like running so much. I was very proud when I got the prize. I hope I will be a famous runner. Also , I want to be the Olympics .

الاسبوع الماضي حصلت على جائزه في الجري . أستطعت أن أجري 3 كيلو متر في 30 دقيقه . احب الجري كثيرا جدا . كنت فخور عندما حصلت على الجائزه . أتمنى أن أكون عداء مشهور .

أشياء رجال الاطفاء يستطيعوا عملها Things that Firefghters can do

Firefighters are brave people. They can save people from dangerous fire. Also, They like helping others. They are very fast in their moving towards fire. They can climb up high buildings using ladders to keep people's lives . They use water to put out fire .

رجال الاطفاء اناس شجعان . يستطيعون انقاذ الناس من الحريق الخطير . وأيضا . انهم يحبون مساعدة الآخرين . انهم يتحركون بسرعه في اتجاه الحريق . يستطيعون تسلق المباني العاليه مستخدمين السلالم لكي ينقذوا حياة الناس . انهم يستخدمون المياه ليطفئوا الحريق .

تقرير اخباري عن حادثه A news report about an accident

There has been an accident in the desert. A tourist fell over and brole his ankle. Two of his friends carried him to the nearest village. Some people in the village drove him to a-hospital. He became much better. He told our reporter " I would like to thank all the people who helped me " .



UNIT NINE
COMMUNICATIONS

LESSONS (1-2)

New Vocabulary

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
messengers	الرسول	pigeons	الحمام	telegram	البرقية
text messages	رسائل نصية	realise	يدرك	airmail	بريد جوى
until	حتى	post office	مكتب بريد	electronic	إلكتروني
communication	اتصال	hobby	هواية	electricity	كهرباء
skin	جلد - بشره	Envelope	مظروف	Iraq	العراق
danger	الخطر	Animal skin	جلد الحيوان	neighbour	جار
hill	التل	form	شكل	the best way	أفضل طريقه
neck	رقبه	century	قرن	billion	بليون
habits	عادات	routine	روتين يومي	bakery	مخبز
village	قرية	popular	شعبي محبوب	regular	منتظم
north	شمال	danger	خطر	international	عالمي - دولي
south	جنوب	safety	أمان	local	محلي
take	يأخذ	give	يعطي	send	يرسل
the oldest	الأقدم	above	فوق	receive	يستقبل
The newest	الأحدث	below	أسفل		

.....Be one of the + صفة + est to + المصدر

EX:- Egypt was one of the first places to send letters to other countries .

EX:- Ali is the best pupils to read English well .

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1- It used to be popular to send letters by -----

- a. eagle b. falcon c. pogeon d. parrot

2- In 1917, planes started taking ----- Letters all over the world .

- a. email b. pigeon c. airmail d. telegram

3- ----- used to carry the envelopes to people by hand.

- a. Doctors b. Teachers c. Engineers d. Messengers

4- Anyone with a ----- and the internet could send and get messages .

- a. car b. computer c. television d. shirt

5- Now people ----- more than 182 billion emails around the world every day .

- a. make b. do c. eat d. send

6- A / An ----- is a form of communication .

- a. train b. email c. chair d. class

7- If something is electronic, it uses -----

- a. oil b. water c. fire d. electricity

8- ----- are short electronic letters .

- a. Telegram b. electricity c. pigeons d. messengers

9- What's the best way to ----- with your friends.

- a. take b. communicate c. send d. come

10- In Iraq, People first used ----- to send letters in the 1100s.

- a. emails b. post office c. pigeons d. horses

11- Pigeons carried the letters around their -----

- a. neck b. wings c. tails d. heads



- 12- A/An-----is a short electronic letter .
a. letter b. internet c. telegram d. envelope
- 13-In the past-----on horses took letters from a place to another in Egypt.
a. doctors b. traders c. carpenters d. messengers
- 14- Planes used to take-----letters all over the world.
a. airmail b. seamail c. email d. airline
- 15- It's important to-----the importance of modern technology.
a. realise b. early c. quickly d. lazily
- 16- The invitation of email helped people to communicate more-----
a. slowly b. turned c. read d. had
- 17- In 1850-----made international communicationeasier and quicker .
a. cars b. camels c. emails d. telegrams
- 18-The first envelopes were made of animal-----
a. ears b. mouths c. necks d. skins
- 19-trains began to -----letters in 1832 .
a. make b. carry c. work d. visit
- 20- It was-----to send letters by pigeons .
a. bad b. popular c. clean d. quick
- 21- People began to write letters after the chinese -----paper .
a. wrote b. invented c. read d. found
- 22-Iwrote the name and address on the -----and put the letter inside.
a. stamp b. envelope c. message d. email
- 23- -----have been at the building for two hours. They put out the fire.
a. teachers b. Firefighters c. Doctors d. swimmers
- 24- I was walking down the street, -----I fell down .
a. lately b. so c. sudden d. suddenly
- 25- The-----has been empty since last year.
a. building b. build c. builder d. built
- 26- The weather was good but suddenly it-----
a. travelled b. changed c. moved d. drove
- 27- A brave man-----into the sea and rescued the child .
a. drowned b. fished c. hunted d. jumped
- 28-An email is a form of-----
a. correction b. communication c. electricity d. birds
- 29-With a computer and the internet, you could send and get -----.
a. messengers b. messages c. pigeons d. horses
- 30- Telegrams are short electronic-----
a. emails b. letters c. messengers d. pigeons
- 31- Pigeons are flying -----.
a. animals b. birds c. fish d. insects
- 32-The first envelopes were made of animal -----
a. blood b. bones c. heads d. skins
- 33- Airmail letters, Pigeons and messengers are famous of-----
a. food b. transport c. sport d. communication
- 34- People began to write letters after the Chinese -----paper .
a. did b. discovered c. invented d. invited



- 35- Pigeons used to carry the letters around their-----
a. legs b. necks c. wings d. body
- 36-An email is a form of-----
a. transport b. electricity c. reading d. communication
- 37- We send -----letters to people in another country .
a. airmail b. text messages c. envelope d. email
- 38- It used to be popular to send letters by -----
a. sparrow b. hen c. eagle d. pigeon
- 39-In the ninth century, Egypt sent letters by -----
a. messages b. passages c. telephones d. messengers
- 40- In the 1850s-----made international communication easier and quicker
a. books b. schools c. envelopes d. telegrams
- 41- You should use sun cream to protect your-----from the sun .
a. leather b. skin c. bones d. skin
- 42- In the past, Letters was the best way to -----with friends .
a. speak b. read c. talk d. communicate
- 43- Birds used to carry the letters around their -----
a. noses b. hairs c. eyes d. necks
- 44- Telegrams are short -----letters .
a. electricity b. electric c. metal d. wooden
- 45- A computer engineer sent the first-----message in 1992 .
a. video b. text c. list d. menu
- 46- The Chinese invented -----n around 100BCE .
a. newspapers b. mobiles c. x-rays d. paper
- 47- I didn't -----that you were so unhappy .
a. play b. happen c. realise d. leave
- 48- You should be polite to your-----
a. thives b. policemen c. neighbours d. doctors
- 49- A/An-----is a bird that was used for sending letters in the past .
a. fox b. lion c. elephant d. pigeon
- 50- Planes take -----all over the world .
a. pigeon s b. telegrams c. messengers d. airmail letters

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

forms	أشكال	Farmsl.	مزارع	hobby	هواية	happy	سعيد
electronic	إلكترونى	electric	كهربى	post	بريد	past	ماضى

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - There are many farms of mails. (-----)
- 2 - Reading is my favourite happy. (-----)
- 3 - I went to the past office to send a letter . (-----)
- 4 - Messengers used to carry the envelope to people at hand (-----)
- 5 - Your neck is above your mouth . (-----)
- 6 - How often do you send emails or next messages . (-----)
- 7 - Parrots are birds which are used to send messages . (-----)
- 8 - It used to be popular to send letters at pigeon . (-----)

- 9 - The decade is a period of 100 years . (-----)
- 10 - Telegrams are short electric letters . (-----)
- 11 - What's your favourite frame of communication ? (-----)
- 12 - That's the classmate who lives next door to me . (-----)
- 13 - How often have you been a teacher? For 10 years . (-----)
- 14 - Do you know who discovered email . (-----)
- 15 - The email is a form of complication . (-----)
- 16 - How do you communicate in your friends (-----)
- 17 - People used to make messages using smoke. (-----)
- 18 - People used to start fires on the botton of hills to communicate . (-----)
- 19 - I couldn't read the address on the antelope . (-----)
- 20 - In 1972, America Tomlinson discovered email . (-----)
- 21 - How do you communicate in your friends (-----)
- 22 - Telegrams are short electricity letters . (-----)
- 23 - Letters were sent by messengers on donkeys . (-----)
- 24 - We put litres in envelope . (-----)

STRUCTURES

USED TO استخدام

تستخدم (used to) للتعبير عن عادة أو فعل كان يحدث بانتظام فى زمن الماضى ولم يعد يحدث الآن

(1) (حالة الإثبات) المصدر + Used to + الفاعل

EX:- Ali used to work in a bank, but now he works in office .

(2) (حالة النفي) المصدر + didn't + use to + الفاعل

EX:- Ali didn't use to play football .

(3) (حالة السؤال بهل) المصدر + use to + الفاعل + Did

EX:- Did Ali use to watch TV ?

Yes, He did . No , He didn't .

(4) (السؤال بإداة) المصدر + use to + الفاعل + did + أداة استفهام

EX:- Where did you use to live before you moved to the city ?

I used to live in a village .

(am - is - are) + used to + V + ing + الفاعل

EX:- He is used to reading .

1- Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d

- 1- My brother -----To work in a bank .
a. use b. used c. uses d. using
- 2- When I was younger, I didn't -----To like salad.
a. use b. used c. uses d. using
- 3- We used to live in a farm, but now we -----In the city.
a. live b. lived c. living d. were living
- 4- Did your father -----to work by bus .
a. use b. used c. uses d. using
- 5- Did you use to play in the street? - Yes, I-----
a. use b. used c. do d. did
- 6- I like salad now, but I -----use to like it in the past .
a. do b. don't c. did d. didn't



- 7- Mr Magdi used to-----English before he came to Cairo.
a.teaching b. teaches c. teach d. taught
- 8- Where -----you use to live before you moved here ?
a.do b. did c. are d. were
- 9- We -----live in a farm, but now we live in the city .
a.use to b. used c. used to d. use
- 10- My grandfather -----to play tennis when he was young .
a.used b. uses c. using d. uses
- 11- She used to get up late but now she -----.
a.didn't b. don't c. doesn't d. aren't
- 12- He-----get up early when he was young .
a.used to b. uses to c. use to d. used
- 13- What did you-----do when you were young ?
a.used to b. uses to c. use d. use to
- 14- Ali didn't -----smoke in the past .
a.used to b. uses to c. use d. use to
- 15- Sami -----his friend Nabil since 2014.
a.didn't see b. hasn't seen c. haven't seen d. doesn't see
- 16- When I was young, I used to-----football .
a.playing b. play c. played d. plays
- 17- I used-----up early during school, but now I get up late .
a.getting b. gets c. got d. to get
- 18- I-----use to play tennis when I was young.
a.wasn't b. did c. don't d. didn't
- 19- Where -----you use to live before you moved to Aswan ?
a.did b. were c. do d. does
- 20- Hala didn't-----to like rice When she was young .
a.used b. use c. using d. uses
- 21- Hend used to-----as an officer .
a.working b. work c. working d. worked
- 22- Ali-----ride a bike when he was 5 years old .
a.used to b. uses to c. use to d. used
- 23- She-----to break her toys when she was young.
a.used to b. uses to c. used d. use to
- 24- -----you use to get up early in the past ?
a.Do b. Did c. Were d. Does
- 25- There used -----a big tree on the left of the building..
a.to b. be c. to be d. being
- 26- They didn't-----send emails, like many people do today.
a. used b. used to c. use d. use to
- 27- How did they use to -----these letters .
a.sent b. send c. sending d. sends
- 28- Messengers-----to carry the envelopes to people by hand .
a.use b. using c. used d. uses
- 29- It used to-----popular to send letters by pigeon .
a.is b. am c. be d. are



- 30- We used to live on a farm, but now we-----in the city .
a. lived b. live c. lives d. living
- 31- My parents didn't use to-----a car, but now they always drive to the shops
a. has b. had c. have d. having
- 32- I-----use to go to bed late when I was younger .
a. don't b. hadn't c. won't d. didn't
- 33- -----you use to go to the park when you were younger ?
a. Do b. Did c. Does d. Are
- 34- Where -----you use to live in the past ?
a. do b. had c. does d. did
- 35- I-----drink coffee when I was young, but now I don't .
a. used b. used to c. use d. use to
- 36- I didn't-----to play with matches when I was young .
a. used b. used to c. use d. use to

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - We used to playing football . (-----)
- 2 - Where did you used to live five years ago ? (-----)
- 3 - He didn't used to have a computer . (-----)
- 4 - Do you use to ride a bike in the past ? (-----)
- 5 - How were people use to send letters . (-----)
- 6 - We used to living in a village . (-----)
- 7 - I didn't used to wear short clothes . (-----)
- 8 - She used to cooking the food . (-----)
- 9 - I use to read English a lot . (-----)
- 10 - He doesn't use to ride a bike . (-----)
- 11 - She didn't use for watch TV . (-----)
- 12 - Do you use ti play tennis ? (-----)
- 13 - Does he used go out ? (-----)
- 14 - What does he used to eat ? (-----)
- 15 - I wasn't use to go to bed late when I was younger (-----)
- 16 - In north America people used to sends messages using smoke . (-----)
- 17 - I not use to like fish when I was young. (-----)
- 18 - I didn't using to like salad When I was young . (-----)
- 19 - Did your mother used to read to you when you were younger . (-----)
- 20 - My sister uses to wear a hat when she was five . (-----)
- 21 - Those two trees don't use to be as tall as thay are now . (-----)
- 22 - What do you use to do in the past ? (-----)
- 23 - What did you used to do when you were younger ? (-----)
- 24 - Now, I go to bed but I used to do that before (-----)

UNIT NINE COMMUNICATIONS

LESSONS (3-4)

New Vocabulary

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
website	موقع على نت	provide	يزود - يمد	survey	مسح - استبيان
reason for	المبرر ل	research	بحث	remote control	التحكم عن بعد
price	سعر - ثمن	screen	شاشة	social network sites	موقع تواصل اجتماعي
attract	يجذب	postcard	بطاقه بريدية	government	الحكومة
population	عدد السكان	regularly	بانتظام	timetable	جدول مواعيد
internet user	مستخدم النت	include	يشتمل	Panama Canal	قناة بنما
Jeddah	مدينة جدة	amount	كمية	secondary	ثانوي
attractions	عوامل جذب	sew	يخيط	instead	بدلا من
almost	معظم	activities	أنشطة	the early 1990s	أوائل التسعينات
directions	اتجاهات	date	تاريخ	opening hours	ساعات بدء العمل
architect	مهندس	grow	ينمو - يزداد	online	متصل بالانترنت
local	معماري	free time	وقت فراغ	offline	غير متصل بالنت
international	محلي	turn on	يشغل	company	شركة
remote	دولي	turn off	يطفىء	advantages	مميزات
near	بعيد - نلي	useful	مفيد	disadvantages	عيوب
easy	قريب	difficult	صعب	useless	عديم الفائدة

تعبيرات وجمل جمل

Different from	يختلف عن	A quarter of	ربع	Walk to	يمشي الى
Amount of money	كمية من	Find out	يكشف	Pay for	يدفع ثمن
Similar to	مشابه ل	In black and white	بالابيض	Go online	يتصل بالنت
Make the pictures on the screen bigger or smaller	يجعل الصور على الشاشة أكبر و أصغر	It's difficult to believe that	من الصعب أن نصدق	Communicate with	يتواصل
		A quarter of Egypt's population	ربع سكان مصر	On TV screen	على شاشة
				on the internet	على شبكة النت

كلمات وتعريفاتها

Research	بحث	To find out information about something.	ان تجد معلومات عن شيء ما
Provide	يمد - يزود	To give something that people need.	أن تعطي الناس ما يحتاجون
Reason	السبب - المبرر	Why some thing happens.	لماذا حدث هذا الشيء
Prices	الاسعار	The amount of money you have to pay for things.	كمية من المال يجب عليك أن تدفعها مقابل أشياء .

GENERAL NOTES

مع ذلك , However .

تستخدم للربط بين جملتين متعارضتين وتوضع أول الجملة الثانية وبعدها فاصله سفليه .

EX:- He played well . However, He didn't win the match .

بالرغم من Although = Though

تستخدم للربط بين جملتين متعارضتين وتوضع أول الجملة الاولى أو بين الجملتين .

EX:- Although he played well , He didn't win the match .

يمكن استخدام فاعلا في نهاية الجملتين لتدل على التناقض .

EX:-The first remote controls were made in 1948. The early remote controls couldn't change the channels , though .



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1- many young people like to communicate using social network -----
a. sights b. sites c. location d. books
- 2- How much is this cup? I can't see the -----on it.
a. price b. reason c. site d. remote control
- 3- The Nile -----most of Egypt's water.
a. takes b. buys c. provides d. communicate
- 4- I can't turn on the television because I can't find the -----
a. site b. price c. reason d. remote control
- 5- The -----that Ahmed speaks good English is because he went to school in London .
a. book b. reason c. price d. television
- 6- -----is finding out information about something.
a. Research b. Price c. Reason d. Site
- 7- Many people use social networking sites to communicate -----their friends .
a. to b. in c. with d. about
- 8- In a survey, 23% of internet users in Egypt said they use their mobile phones to -----online .
a. make b. do c. go d. take
- 9- Before the 1860s, a boat from Jeddah to London-----, about 16.000 kilometres .
a. travel b. travelled c. travelling d. used to travel
- 10- Today's canals-----many boats a lot of time and fuel .
a. save b. saves c. saving d. used to save
- 11- Before the Panama Canal opened in 1914, a boat that was travelling from USA to Japan -----eight days longer .
a. take b. takes c. taking d. used to take
- 12- Ten years-----only a very small number of people were able to go online
a. about b. go c. age d. ago
- 13- Now, we usually use a -----to change channels .
a. mobile phone b. notebook c. laptop d. remote control
- 14-----1955, the first remote control was made .
a. On b. At c. Of d. In
- 15- We didn't use to have electricity on the farm, so it-----dark .
a. got b. had c. made d. did
- 16- The opposite of " turn on " is " turn-----".
a. at b. off c. in d. of
- 17- -----is the amount of money you have to pay for things .
a. Research b. Price c. reason d. Site
- 18- -----means to give something that people need .
a. Communicate b. Provide c. Study d. Site
- 19- When we were young, We -----live in Alex .
a. use b. used c. used to d. are used to
- 20- I didn't -----to practice sport when I was young .
a. uses b. used c. using d. use
- 21- In the past, TV programmes were in -----
a. blue and green b. black and white c. yellow and orange d. pink and red



- 22- Before planes, people used -----to send letters by air .
a. messengers b. pigeons c. horses d.airmail letters
- 23- Social networking sites are the most popular reason -----people to go online .
a. of b. for c. at d.with
- 24- We can-----information on the internet .
a. research b. buy c. sell d.draw
- 25- The internet activites-----Watching films and videos .
a. use b. include c. provide d.grow
- 26- The most popular reason to -----online is to watch videos.
a. give b. play c. go d.take
- 27- -----2012, my brother went to university .
a. On b. At c. With d.In
- 28- In my free time, I'd like to watch TV-----
a. remote control b. programmes c. sets d.colours
- 29- You can-----channels using the remote control.
a. buy b. change c. see d.watch
- 30- The first remote control could only make the pictures bigger or-----,
a. smaller b. faster c. fatter d.narrower
- 31- I sent a-----to my cousin on his birthday wishing him a better life .
a. post b. postcard c. stamp d.phone
- 32- The-----that Ahmed speaks good English is that he went to school in London .
a. life b. reason c. result d. hope
- 33- New canals help boats save time and-----
a. age b. fuel c. food d. people
- 34- The-----of some things got higher.
a. price b. prize c. coulour d. date
- 35- The dictionary-----us with the meaning of words .
a. makes b. gives c. provides d. teaches
- 36- The jop of the-----is to design and build buildings.
a. painter b. engineer c. builder d. architect
- 37- Kareem -----to that new flat 10 years ago .
a. moved b. moves c. moving d. will move
- 38- What did you use to do when you -----a child .
a. are b. were c. will be d. would be
- 39- My sister didn't -----cook 5 years ago .
a. use b. used c. used to d. use to
- 40- -----do you like to communicate with?
a. What b. Who c. Where d. Why
- 41- I can't turn on the television because I can't find the-----
a. price b. key c. screen d. remote control
- 42- Many young people like to communicate using -----
a. population b. routine c. survey d. social networking sites
- 43- Before 1935, The picture on a TV-----was smaller than a postcard
a. screen b. remote control c. research d. distance
- 44- How much is the cup ? I can't see the-----on it ?
a. colour b. kind c. type d. price



- 45- Many museum and tourist-----put their information on social networking sites .
a. directions b. attractions c. government d. movements
- 46- Any invention has its advantages and-----
a. surveys b. percentage c. directions d. disadvantages
- 47- In 1940s, TV-----began to make color programmes .
a. screen b. canals c. shows d. companies
- 48- The Nile-----most of Egypt's water .
a. walks b. provides c. describes d. takes
- 49- It is important-----you to understand this question.
a. with b. in c. of d. for
- 50- The-----that Ahmed speaks good English is that he went to school in London .
a. reason b. cause c. routine d. fuel
- 51- watching TV is a part of my daily-----
a. amount b. survey c. screen d. remote control
- 52- The internet didn't use to be-----in the past than it is today .
a. popular b. unpopular c. cold d. warm
- 53- The internet -----us with a lot of information .
a. use b. take c. leave d. provide
- 54- In the past, people used to communicate-----using pigeon .
a. at b. by c. in d. of
- 55- I bought the-----car as yours .
a. similar b. different c. same d. as
- 56- I haven't had any -----with him for several years .
a. population b. communication c. information d. abbreviation
- 57- She likes to surf the-----in the evenings .
a. telegram b. airmail c. internet d. envelope
- 58- he has a computer with a 21 inch-----
a. screen b. paper c. place d. century
- 59- I don't-----him because he always tells lies .
a. disbelieve b. belive c. use d. misuse

كلمات تساعدك على حل سؤال التصحيح

reason	المبرر - السبب	season	فصل من	hours	ساعات	ours	ملكنا
site	موقع		فصول السنه	pay	يدفع مال	buy	يشترى
		seat	مقعد ثابت				

2- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 - What is the reason for go to school late ? (-----)
- 2 - The reason for Ahmed speaks good English is because he went to school in London . (-----)
- 3 - Ninety years ago, television were very different to today . (-----)
- 4 - About quarter of Egypt's pollution use the internet regularly. (-----)
- 5 - We use the screen to change the TV channels. (-----)
- 6 - Egypt had TVs in a 1960s . (-----)



- 7 - Planes carry telegrams from one country to another. (-----)
- 8 - Many museums and tourists attract put opening hours. On social network sites. (-----).
- 9 - The Panama channel in America is very important . (-----)
- 10 - I didn't use to playing football. (-----)
- 11 - If something is electronic, It uses water. (-----)
- 12 - Research means finding at information about something. (-----)
- 13 - When does you use to sing . (-----)
- 14 - 23% of internet use in Egypt go online by their mobile phones (-----)
- 15 - The opposite of " advantages " is " inadvantafes " . (-----)
- 16 - Websites can provide useless information about train timetables (-----)
- 17 - Egypt's pollution use interner regularly . (-----)
- 18 - I stayed in Paris for two weeks . (-----)
- 19 - The Chinese invited paper long ago . (-----)
- 20 - Now , You can sell and get messages quickly. (-----)
- 21 - I found in a new website for my uncle on the internet. (-----)
- 22 - Our grandparents used to get information through read. (-----)
- 23 - Popular activities on the internet exclude watching films (-----)
- 24 - The Egyptian governorate has built a lot of schools all over Egypt (-----)
- 25 - All city buildings are with white. (-----)
- 26 - Sief always tells the truth, So I disbelieve him. (-----)
- 27 - These days, TV programmes are different to those in the past (-----)
- 28 - Many young people like to call using social networking sites. (-----)
- 29 - About a quarter of Egypt's pollution use the internet regularly (-----)
- 30 - What's the history today ? The 10th of October . (-----)

Language Function

هناك طرق عديدة للتعبير بها عن التاريخ والوقت منها :-

- In 1955, في عام 1955
 - In the 1940s , في الاربعينيات (الفترة من 1940 الى 1949)
 - Before / After 1935..... (قبل / بعد) عام 1935
 - (About) 90 years ago,..... منذ حوالي 90 سنة
 - (About) ten years later , بعد حوالي عشر سنوات
- ملحوظة هامة جدا :- عند السؤال عن الوقت نستخدم اداة الاستفهام when

1 Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Mohamed asked Ahmed about his brother

Mohamed : When ----- your brother go to Cairo university?

Ahmed : He went to university. ----- 2000 .

Mohamed : How long did he study there ?

Ahmed : He studied there for seven ----- .

Mohamed : When did he become a doctor? .

Ahmed : ----- nine years ago .

=====



2-Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

A reporter makes a report about footballers

Reporter :Hello , -----your name ?

Footballer : Nabil Fawzy .

Reporter : What did you -----to do 30 years ago ?

Footballer : I used to -----football .

Reporter : -----you earn much money from it ?

Footballer :No , I didn't, We played because we loved playing for our country .

3-Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

A newspaper article about TVs.

Hesham :I've read an interesting newspaper article about televisions.

Fady : All right. When did people start-----TV in Egypt ?

Hesham : -----the 1960s.

Fady : When did Egypt make its first colour TV -----?

Hesham : In 1973, Do you know that people first used a -----
control after 1940 ?

Fady : Oh, I can't believe .

4- Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Salma and Toka are talking about television.

Salma :How were television before 1935 ?

Toka : The picture on The TV -----was smaller than a postcard .

Salma : What -----were most TV programmes ?

Toka : Most TV programmes were in black and white.

Salma : What couldn't early remote -----do ?

Toka :They couldn't change the channels, They could only make the
picture on the screen bigger or -----.

5-Complete the following dialogue with one word each?

Huda's favourite hobby is running a website .

Mona :What's your favourite hobby , Huda ?

Huda : Running a website for boys and girls.

Mona : -----did you start it ?

Huda : I started it two years-----

Mona : -----do you run this website ?

Huda :To help young people-----English .

1-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Sally : What did you use to do when you were young ?

Faeida : -----

2-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Toka : Did you use to live on a farm when you were young ?

Salma : -----

Toka : WOW, So you saw lots of farm animals .



3-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Fatma : ----- ?

Maha : Egypt had TVs in the 1960s.

4-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Toka : ----- ?

Salma : When I was young, I used to run in the street .

5-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Mohamed : What kind of TV programmes did you use to watch when you
Were much younger ?

Helal : -----

6-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Teacher : ----- ?

Student : In the 1940s, TV companies in the USA began to make colour
television .

7--Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ali : When did you buy your mobile phone ?

Kareem : -----

8--Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ashraf : ----- ?

Ramzy : Because colour TVs were very expensive .

Ashraf : They are cheaper now .

9--Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ali : How often do you watch TV ?

Kareem : -----

Ali : Too much TV is bad for you .

100-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:-

Ali : ----- ?

Kareem : When I was younger, I used to watch a lot of cartoons .

Ali : I used to watch comic programmes .

Important Paragraphs

" Forms of communication "

There are many forms of communication. People used messengers on horses to send letters . Pigeons carried people's letters in the past . Telegrams made international communication easier and quicker . In 1917, Planes started taking airmail letters all over the world . Now people send billion emails around the world every day .

يوجد الكثير من أشكال الاتصال . الناس استخدموا الرسل على الخسل لكي يرسلوا الرسائل . الحمام حمل رسائل الناس فى الماضى . والتلغراف جعل الاتصال العالمى أسهل و أسرع . فى عام 1917 الطائرات بات أن تأخذ البريد الجوى حول انحاء العالم . والآن الناس ترسل البلايين من البريد الالكترونى حول كل انحاء العالم .

التلفاز فى الماضى Television in the past

People first had televisions about 90 years ago . They were very different from today . A TV screen was smaller than a postcard. Most programmes were in black and white . TVs became different. You can use remote control to change cannels. Also screens became bigger, but with a small thinkness.

منذ 90 سنه امثلك الناس التلفاز . واجهزة التلفاز كانت مختلفه عن الاجهزه هذه الايام . شاشة التلفاز كانت أصغر من البطاقه البريديه . ومعظم البرامج كانت بالاسود والابيض . وجهاز التلفاز أصبحت مختلفه . أنت تستطيع أن تستخدم جهاز التحكم عن بعد لكى تغير القنوات . وأيضا الشاشات أصبحت أكبر .

لماذا تعتقد ان النت مهم Why you think that the internet Is important

I think the internet is the most important invention. It made communication much quicker . You can send emails all over the world quickly. Also, It helps us to have many friends in different countries . It helps students in their study . The internet made the world a small village .

أعتقد ان الانترنت اهم اختراع . انه جعل الاتصال أكثر سرعه . تستطيع أن ترسل البريد الالكتروني حول انحاء العالم بسرعه . وأيضا . انه يساعد ان يكون لديك أصدقاء فى دول مختلفه . انه يساعد الطلاب فى دراستهم . والنت جعل العالم قريه سعيده .

تم بحمد الله

مع أطيب تمنياتى بالتوفيق والنجاح

MR.NABIL FAWZY

01227244601

والى اللقاء فى الترم الثانى

انشاء الله

اضحك

www.khawagah.blogspot.com



مدونة خواجه

ترحب بكم

وتمنى لكم أحلى الأوقات

كل عام وأنتم بخير

دانييل ديفو

معلوماته

1. ولد دانييل ديفو في لندن عام 1660 . درس بجد في المدرسة وحصل على العديد من الوظائف الشبيهة . كان رجل أعمال حيث قام بشراء وبيع الأشياء وسافر إلى الكثير من الدول المختلفة في أوائل الفترة ما بين 1700 حتى 1710 . عمل كمراسل اخبارى في لندن .

أعماله :-

2. كتب ديفو كتابه الأول روبنسون كروزو في عام 1719 عندما كان في التاسعة والخمسين من عمره . وكانت ناجحة جدا . ويعتقد الكثير من الناس أن هذه هي أول رواية باللغة الإنجليزية . كما كتب روايات أخرى (مول فلاندرز - كولونيل جاك) وروايته الاخيره (روكسانا) في عام 1724 .

وفاته :-

3. توفي ديفو في لندن عندما كان عمره 70 عاما .

بليزا من قصه جيله

Questions & Answers

(1) Who wrote Robinson Crusoe ? من الذي كتب كتاب روبنسون كروزو ؟
Daniel Defoe . دانييل ديفو .

(2) Where was Daniel Defoe born ? When ? أين ومتى ولد دانييل ديفو ؟
Daniel Defoe was born in London in 1660 . هو ولد في لندن عام 1660 .

(3) What was Defoe's first book ? ما هو أول كتاب لديفو ؟
Robinson Crusoe . روبنسون كروزو .

(4) How old was Daniel Defoe when he wrote Robinson Crusoe ? ما هو عمر دانييل ديفو عندما كتب كتاب روبنسون كروزو ؟
When he was 59 . عندما كان في التاسعة والخمسين من عمره .

(5) Mention four of Defoe's novels ? اذكر أربعة قصص لديفو ؟

(Robinson Crusoe – Moll Flanders, Colonel Jack and his last novel Roxana)
* روبنسون كروزو ومول فلاندرز وكولونيل جاك وروايته الاخيره روكسانا .

فكرة القصة

- في الفترة ما بين 1600 إلى 1610 . كان الناس مهتمين بالعلم والاختراعات الحديثة . أراد البحارة أن أربعة أعوام . اخذ ديفو فكرة روبنسون كروزو من قصة حقيقية لالكسندر سيلكيرك . كان سيلكيرك بحارا أمضى أربع سنوات وحيدا على جزيرة صغيره بالقرب من أمريكا الجنوبية . وفي عام 1709 تم إنقاذه من قبل سفينة انجليزية ثم قام سيلكيرك بكتابة قصة حياته وذاعت شهرته .
- روبنسون كروزو يشبه سيلكيرك . صنع منزلا جيدا على الجزيرة وزرع الطعام الخاص به . كان لديه حيوانات وقام بصنع ملابس الخاصة وتعلم أن يعيش بمفرده .

Questions & Answers

(1) What were people interested in the 1600s ?

بماذا اهتم الناس فى الفترة من 1600 إلى 1610 ؟

They were interested in science and new invention .

إنهم كانوا مهتمين بالعلم والاختراعات الحديثة .

(2) What did sailors want to do in the 1600s ?

ماذا أراد البحارون أن يفعلوا فى الفترة من 1600 إلى 1610 م

They wanted to travel to new countries and see new things .

أرادوا أن يسافروا الى دول جديدة ويروا أشياء جديدة .

(3) What did Defoe take the idea for Robinson Crusoe from ?

مم أخذ ديفو فكرة قصة روبنسون كروزو ؟

He took it from the true story of Alexander Selkirk's story .

أخذها من قصة الكسندر سيلكيرك الحقيقية .

(4) Who was Alexander Selkirk?

من هو سيلكيرك ؟

He was a sailor who spent four years alone on a small island near South America .

هو كان بحارا وقضى أربعة أعوام بمفرده على جزيرة صغيرة بالقرب من أمريكا الجنوبية .

(5) How long were sailors sometimes at sea ?

ما المدة التى قضاها البحارة أحيانا فى البحر ؟

For three or for hours .

لمدة ثلاث أو أربع سنوات .

(6) What is the main idea of this story ?

ما هى الفكرة الرئيسية للقصة ؟

The main idea is (SFLF – RELIANCE) .

الفكره الرئيسية لقصه هي (الاعتماد على الذات) .

It's important to learn how to live alone, to make your own home, grow food and keep animals .

من المهم أن تتعلم كيف تعيش بمفردك وتصنع منزلك الخاص بك وتزرع الطعام وتربى الحيوانات

(7) Do you think life as a sailor in the 1600s was dangerous or safe ?

هل تعتقد أن الحياة كباحر فى العشر سنوات الأولى من عام 1600 كانت خطيرة أم آمنة ؟

I think it was safe because sailors were at sea for 3 or 4 years .

أعتقد انها كانت آمنة لان البحارة ظلوا فى البحر لمدة 3 أو 4 سنوات .

(8) Would you like to live alone on an island? Why / Why not ?

هل تحب أن تعيش بمفردك على الجزيرة ؟ لماذا ؟ ولماذا لا ؟

No, I wouldn't because life on an island would be very difficult and dangerous .

لا أريد . لأن الحياة على الجزيرة صعبه جدا وخطيرة .

(9) What is the moral of the story ?

ما هو المغزى من القصة ؟
هو الاعتماد على الذات .

It is self – reliance .

(10) How did Crusoe get his own food on the island ?

كيف حصل كروزو على طعامه على الجزيرة ؟

He grew his own food .

هو زرع طعامه الخاص به .

(11) Robinson Crusoe (in the story) is like Selkirk . How ?

شخصية روبنسون كروزو كانت تشبه شخصية سيلكيرك . كيف ؟

Both of them made a good home , grew their own food and had animals and made their own clothes .

كلاهما بنى بيتا جيدا وزرع غذاؤه وكان لديه حيوانات وصنع ملابسه .

The characters الشخصيات

(1) Robinson Crusoe : -

روبينسون كروزو : -

* He was born in 1632 in York in England . ولد روبنسون كروزو فى يورك فى انجلترا .

* He was an adventurer . هو كان مغامر .

* He loved to be a sailor . هو أحب أن يكون بحارا .

* He became a good sailor and a trader during his first voyage to London .

هو أصبح تاجر وبحار جيد أثناء رحلته البحرية الى لندن .

* He was taken by pirates as a slave to Morocco . أخذ بواسطة القراصنة كعبد الى المغرب .

* He escaped, but the ship sank and he became alone on an island .

هو هرب لكن السفينة غرقت وهو أصبح بمفرده على الجزيرة .

* He learned to live alone and made many things that helped him to live on the island .

هو تعلم أن يعيش على الجزيرة بمفرده وصنع أشياء كثيرة والتي ساعدته أن يعيش على الجزيرة .

* He wrote a diary every day . هو كتب مذكراته كل يوم .

* He made a boat that enabled him to sail around the island .

هو صنع قارب الذي مكنه أن يبحر حول الجزيرة

* He was worried when he saw a man's footprint, but he was brave .

هو كان قلق عندما هو رأى اثر قدم لإنسان لكن هو كان شجاع .

* He rescued a prisoner from the dangerous men and called him " Friday "

هو أنقذ احد السجناء من الرجال الخطيرين وسماه (فريداى) .

* Friday and Crusoe rescued two more prisoners and became four friends .

فريداى وكروزو أنقذوا اثنين من الرجال السجناء فأصبحوا أربعة أشخاص .

* He rescued an English captain and his two friends from the mutineers .

هو أنقذ القائد الانجليزى و اثنين من أصدقائه المتمردين .

* He captured the mutineers, but he didn't want to hurt them .

هو أسر المتمردين لكنه لم يريد أن يؤذيهم .

* He was given an English ship and returned to England .

أعطى سفينة انجليزية وعاد الى انجلترا



- هو تزوج ورزق ثلاثة أطفال .
**He got married and had three children .*
 فى النهاية هو فضل ان يذهب غالى البحر لكي يكون تاجر .
**At the end, He preferred to go to the sea and to be a trader .*
 سيستخدم خبرته ليساعد البحارة الآخرين .
**He would use his experience to help other sailors .*

(2) Friday :-

- هو كان سجين أسباني .
**He was a Spanish prisoner*
 احضر الى الجزيرة بواسطة الرجال الخطرين .
**He was brought to the island by dangerous men*
 كروزو أنقذه وأصبح صديقه .
**Crusoe rescued him and became his friend .*
 ساعد كروزو لينقذ باقي المسجونين .
**He helped Crusoe to rescue the other prisoners .*
 فريداى كان سعيد ليجد أباه .
**He was happy to find his father .*

(3) The dangerous men

- الرجال الخطيرين :-
**They are dangerous people that came to the island many times .*
 انهم كانوا أناس خطيرين والذين أتوا الى الجزيرة مرات عديدة .
**They brought the prisoners to the island and killed them then ate them.*
 هم احضروا السجناء إلى الجزيرة وقتلواهم وبعد ذلك أكلوهم .

(4) The mutineers :-

- المتمردين :-
**They are sailors that don't obey orders.*
 انهم بحاره الذين لايطيعون الأوامر
**They were captured by Crusoe .*
 تم أسرهم بواسطة كروزو
**Crusoe didn't want to hurt them, So he let them stay on the island .*
 كروزو لم يريد أن يؤذيهم لذلك هو تركهم يقيموا على الجزيرة .

(5) The English captain :-

- القائد الانجليزي :-
**He was brought to the island by the mutineers*
 احضر للجزيرة بواسطة المتمردين .
**He was grateful as he gave Crusoe his ship as a kind of thanking .*
 هو كان رجل عظيم لانه أعطى كروزو سفينه كنوع من الشكر .

(6) The pirates :-

- القراصنه :-
**They took the ship to Morocco .*
 هم اخذوا الى دولة المغرب .
**They sold Crusoe and other sailors as slaves .*

Chapter one

THE SET TEXT

وأحداث الفصل

- *Robinson Crusoe was born in 1632 in York in England . He worked hard at school . His parents wanted him to find a good job , but he wanted to go to sea and become a sailor .*

• ولد روبنسون كروزو في مدينة يورك في إنجلترا عام 1632 و عمل بجد في المدرسة . وأراد والده أن يجد وظيفة جيدة ولكنه أراد أن يذهب للبحر ويصبح بحارا .

- *When he was 18 He went to London and found a ship which was sailing to a country in West Africa called Guinea. He bought some goods which he wanted to sell in Guinea and got on the ship, A short time later , The ship left London.*

• في سن 18 سنة هو ذهب إلى لندن ووجد سفينة كانت مبحرة إلى بلد في غرب أفريقيا تسمى (غينيا) واشترى بعض السلع التي كان يريد بيعها في غينيا وركب السفينة . وبعد ذلك بوقت قصير غادرت السفينة لندن .

- *During the long voyage , Crusoe became a good sailor. When the ship arrived in Guinea , He sold his goods and went back to London with a lot of money.*

• وخلال الرحلة الطويل أصبح كروزو بحارا بارعا . وعند وصول السفينة إلى غينيا هو باع بضاعته وعاد غالي لندن بكثير من المال .

In London, Crusoe bought more goods to sell and he sailed towards Guinea again , When they were sailing towards Africa some pirates took the ship . The pirates took Crusoe and the other sailors to Morocco and sped them as slaves .

• وفي لندن قام كروزو بشراء بضائع أكثر لبيعها وأبحر نحو غينيا مرة أخرى . أثناء الإبحار نحو أفريقيا . أخذ بعض القراصنة السفينة وأخذوا كروزو والبحارة الآخرين إلى المغرب وباعوهم كعبيد .

- *After two years , Crusoe was very unhappy and he wanted to escape , One day , He took a small fishing boat , He put some food and water in the boat and he sailed out to the sea .*

• بعد عامين كان كروزو تعيسا جدا وأراد أن يهرب . وفي يوم من الأيام أخذ قارب صيد صغير ووضع بعض الطعام والماء في القارب وأبحر بعيدا في البحر .

After some days in the small boat. A ship sailed by and the captain of, The ship rescued Crusoe . The captain was a kind man and his ship took Crusoe to Brazil, Where he became a farmer and lived happily, After a few years, Crusoe wanted to be a trader again and in 1659 he sailed with some friends to Guinea to sell more goods .

• بعد بضعة أيام في القارب الصغير. أبحرت سفينة بجواره وقام كابتن السفينة بإتقاذ كروزو وكان القبطان رجلا طيبا . وأخذت سفينة كروزو إلى البرازيل حيث أصبح فلاحا وعاش بسعادة. وبعد بضع سنوات أراد كروزو أن يكون تاجرا مرة أخرى . وفي عام 1659 أبحر بعض الأصدقاء إلى غينيا لبيع المزيد من البضائع

- During their voyage , The ship sailed into a big storm , The storm became worse and finally The ship started to sink. All the sailors were thrown into the sea, The next morning Crusoe woke up on a beach, but he couldn't see any of his friends, Only the ship's two cats, there was nobody from the ship with him, He looked around the beach and he found a small river where he could wash and drink some water. That first night . He slept in a big tree so that he was safe from dangerous animals or people .

• وأثناء رحلتهم أبحرت السفينة في عاصفة كبيرة ، أصبحت العاصفة أسوأ وفي النهاية بدأت السفينة تغرق وسقط جميع البحارة في البحر . وفي صباح اليوم التالي. استيقظ كروزو على شاطئ. ولكنه لم يرى أيا من أصدقائه ولكنه فقط وجد قطتي السفينة . فلم يكن هناك أحد من السفينة معه . ونظر حول الشاطئ وجد نهرا صغيرا حيث استطاع أن يغتسل ويشرب الماء. وفي الليلة الأولى. هو نام في شجرة كبيرة ليكون في مأمن من خطر الحيوانات والبشر .

NEW VOCABULARY

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Was born	ولد	Worked	عمل	sailor	بحار
ship	سفينة	hard	بجد	goods	بضائع
during	أثناء	Guinea	دولة غينيا	sail towards	يبحر تجاه
pirate	قرصان	voyage	رحله بحريه	slave	عبد
escape	يهرب	Morocco	دولة المغرب	sailed out to	أبحر بعيدا في
captain	قبطان	Fishing	صيد	sailed by	أبحرت بجوار
Brazil	البرازيل	boat	قارب	trader	تاجر
storm	عاصفة	rescue	ينقذ	sink	يغرق
throw	يلقي	farmer	فلاح	beach	شاطئ
river	نهر	worse	أسوأ	parents	والدين
dangerous	خطير	wake up	يستيقظ	Put	يضع
		safe	امن		
		Show	يظهر		

خالى بالك من اللى جاي



EVENTS OF CHAPTER TWO IN ORDER أحداث الفصل الأول بالترتيب

- (1) Crusoe wanted to go to sea and become a sailor
- (2) When he was 18, He went to London .
- (3) He found a ship which was sailing to Cuinea .
- (4) He bought some goods to sell in Cuinea .
- (5) During the voyage, Crusoe became a good sailor .
- (6) He sold his goods in Cuinea and went back to London with a lot of money .
- (7) When they were sailing again towards Africa, some pirates took the ship
- (8) The pirates took Crusoe and the other men as slaves to Morocco .
- (9) After 2 years, Crusoe escaped in a small boat and sailed out to sea .
- (10) The captain of the English ship rescued Crusoe .
- (11) The captain was kind and took Crusoe with him to Brazil .
- (12) In Brazil, Crusoe lived happily and became a farmer
- (13) After 2 years , Crusoe wanted to be a trader again, So he sailed to Cuinea to sell more goods .
- (14) During the voyage, the ship sailed into a big storm .
- (15) The storm became worse and the ship started to sink .
- (16) All the sailors were thrown away into the sea.
- (17) Crusoe woke up on a beach .
- (18) He couldn't see any of his friends , only the ship's two cats .
- (19) The first night, he slept in a big tree to be safe from dangerous animals or people .

- (1) كروزو أراد أن يذهب إلى البحر ويصبح بحارا .
- (2) عندما كان في سن 18 هو ذهب إلى لندن .
- (3) هو وجد سفينة والتي كانت مبحرة إلى غينيا .
- (4) هو اشترى بعض البضائع لكي يبيعها في غينيا .
- (5) أثناء الرحلة البحرية كروزو أصبح بحار جيدا .
- (6) هو باع بضاعته في غينيا وعاد إلى لندن ومعه كثير من الأموال .
- (7) عندما هم كانوا مبحرين مرة ثانية تجاه إفريقيا بعض القراصنة أخذوا السفينة .
- (8) القراصنة أخذوا كروزو والرجال الآخرين كعبيد إلى دولة المغرب .
- (9) وبعد سنتين كروزو هرب في قارب صغير وأبحر بعيدا عن البحر .
- (10) قبطان السفينة الإنجليزية أنقذ كروزو .
- (11) القبطان كان طيب وأخذ كروزو معه إلى البرازيل .
- (12) في البرازيل . كروزو عاش بسعادة وأصبح فلاح .
- (13) وبعد سنتين كروزو أراد أن يكون تاجرا مرة ثانية لذلك هو أبحر إلى غينيا لكي يبيع بضائع أكثر .
- (14) أثناء الرحلة البحرية السفينة أبحرت في عاصفة كبيرة .
- (15) العاصف أصبحت أسوأ والسفينة بدأت أن تغرق .
- (16) كل البحارة القوا بعيدا في البحر .
- (17) كروزو استيقظ على الشاطئ .
- (18) هو لم يستطع أن يرى أي أحد من أصدقائه . فقط قطتي السفينة .
- (19) في الليلة الأولى هو نام في شجرة كبيرة لكي يكون آمن من الناس والحيوانات الخطيرة .

Questions & Answers

(1) *Where was Robinson Crusoe born ?*

أين ولد روبنسون كروزو ؟

He was born in York in England .

هو ولد فى مدينة يورك فى إنجلترا .

(2) *When was Robinson Crusoe born?*

متو ولد روبنسون كروزو ؟

He was born in 1632 .

هو ولد فى عام 1632 .

(3) *What did Crusoe's parents want for him ?*

ماذا والدي كروزو أرادوا له ؟

They wanted him to find a good job .

هم ارادوه أن يجد وظيفة جيدة

(4) *What did Crusoe want to be when he was young ?*

ماذا كروزو أراد أن يكون عندما كان صغيرا ؟

He wanted to be a sailor .

هو أراد أن يكون بحارا .

(5) *What age was Crusoe when he went to London to become a sailor?*

كم كان عمر كروزو عندما ذهب الى لندن ليصبح بحارا ؟

He was 18 years old .

كان عمره ثمانية عشر سنة .

(6) *Where was Crusoe's first voyage ?*

أين كانت رحلة كروزو الأولى ؟

It was to Guinea .

هى كانت الى غينيا .

(7) *Where is Guinea ?*

أين تكون غينيا ؟

It is in West Africa .

هى كانت فى غرب أفريقيا

(8) *What did Crusoe buy before sailing to Guinea ?*

ماذا اشترى كروزو قبل الإبحار الى غينيا ؟

Some goods.

بعض البضائع .

(9) *What did Crusoe want to do in Guinea ?*

ماذا أراد كروزو أن يفعل فى غينيا ؟

To sell goods from London there .

أن يبيع بضائع من لندن هناك .



(10)How was the voyage to Guinea useful to Crusoe ?

كيف كانت الرحلة الى غينيا مفيدة الى كروزو ؟

He became a good sailor and made a lot of money .

هو أصبح بحار جيد وحصل على الكثير من المال .

(11)What did Crusoe bring to London from Guinea?

ماذا كروزو أحضر الى لندن من غينيا ؟

A lot of money .

الكثير من المال .

(12)What is trader ?

ما هو التاجر ؟

A person who buys and sells things to make money.

التاجر هو شخص يشتري ويبيع الأشياء ليكسب مالا .

(13)What happened to Crusoe when he sailed to Guinea for the second time?

ماذا حدث لكروزو عندما أبحر الى غينيا للمرة الثانية ؟

Some pirates took him , his ship and other sailors to Morocco .

بعض القراصنة أخذوا كروزو وسفينته والبحارة الآخرين إلى دولة المغرب .

(14) What happened to Crusoe and his friends in Morocco?

ماذا حدث لكروزو وأصدقائه في المغرب ؟

They were sold as slaves .

تم بيعهم كعبيد .

(15)What did Crusoe decide to do after two years as a slave in Morocco?

ماذا كروزو قرر أن يفعل بعد سنتين كعبد في المغرب ؟

He decided to escape .

هو قرر أن يهرب .

(16)How did Crusoe feel during his stay in Morocco ?

كيف كان يشعر كروزو أثناء أقامته في المغرب ؟

He felt unhappy .

هو شعر بالحزن .

(17)How did Crusoe escape from Morocco ?

كيف هرب كروزو من المغرب ؟

He took a small fishing boat. He put some food and water in it .

هو أخذ قارب صيد صغير ووضع بعض الطعام والماء فيه .

(18)Who rescued Crusoe from the small boat?

من الذي أنقذ كروزو من القارب الصغير ؟

A captain of a ship .

قبطان السفينة .

(19)How was the captain kind to Crusoe?

كيف كان قبطان السفينة عطوفا مع كروزو ؟

He rescued Crusoe and took him to Brazil .

(20) What did Crusoe do in Brazil ?

ماذا فعل كروزو فى البرازيل ؟

He became a farmer and lived happily .

هو أصبح فلاحا وعاش بسعادة .

ما الوظائف التى عملها كروزو

(21) What jobs did Crusoe have?

بحار وتاجر وفلاح .

A sailor, a trader and a farmer .

(22) What did Crusoe do in 1659?

ماذا فعل كروزو فى عام 1659؟

He sailed with some friends to Guinea again to sell more goods.

هو أبحر الى غينيا مع بعض أصدقائه مرة أخرى لبيع بضائع أكثر .

(23) What did the storm do to Crusoe's ship on his voyage to Guinea again ?

ماذا فعلت العاصفة لسفينة كروزو أثناء رحلته إلى غينيا مرة أخرى ؟

The storm made the ship sink in the sea .

العاصفة جعلت السفينة تغرق في البحر .

(24) Where did Crusoe find himself when he woke up?

أين وجد كروزو نفسه عندما استيقظ ؟

He found himself on a beach of an island .

هو وجد نفسه على شاطئ جزيرة .

(25) What animals did Crusoe see when he woke up on the beach?

ما الحيوانات التي رآها كروزو عندما استيقظ على الشاطئ ؟

Only the ship's two cats .

قطتي السفينة فقط .

(26) What did Crusoe do when he saw the small river?

ماذا فعل كروزو عندما رأى نهر صغير ؟

He washed and drank some water .

اغتسل وشرب بعض المياه .

(27) Where did Crusoe sleep at his first night on the island?

أين نام كروزو فى أول ليلة له على الجزيرة ؟

In A big tree .

على شجره كبيره .

(28) Why did Crusoe sleep in a big tree ?

لماذا كروزو نام على شجره ؟

To be safe from dangerous animals or people .

لكي يكون آمنا من الحيوانات والناس الخطيرين .

(29) What good things happened to Crusoe?

ما الأشياء الجيدة التي حدثت لكروزو ؟

1 - He became a good sailor

1 - حصل على كثير من المال .

2 - He made a lot of money .

3 - هرب من القراصنة .

3 - He escaped from the pirates.

4 - هو عاش بسعادة كفلاح .

4 - He lived happily as a farmer .

5 - هو نجا من العاصفة .

5 - He survived from the storm .

أسئلة التفكير النقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

(30) Why do you think Crusoe wanted to become a sailor ?

لماذا تعتقد أن كروزو أراد أن يصبح بحارا ؟

Because he wanted to travel and see the world .

لأنه أراد أن يرى العالم .

(31) What's Crusoe favourite job besides being a sailor? Why ? ?

ما هي وظيفة كروزو المفضلة بجانب كونه بحارا ؟ ولماذا ؟

To be a trader because he used his job as a sailor to become a trader .

أن يكون تاجرا لأنه أستغل وظيفته كبحار ليصبح تاجرا .

(32) What do you think Crusoe felt when he found himself alone on the beach?

في رأيك بماذا شعر كروزو عندما وجد نفسه وحيدا على الشاطئ؟

He felt sorry to miss his friends .

هو شعر بالحزن لفقدته أصدقائه

(33) Crusoe has an adventurous character , Give examples?

كروزو ذو شخصية مغامرة . أعط أمثله ؟

1 - At the age of 18, he started to be a sailor .

في سن ال 18 بدأ عمله كبحار

2 - He tried to be a trader on his voyages .

حاول أن يكون تاجرا أثناء رحلاته البحرية .

(34) What kinds of goods do you think he bought to sell in Africa?

ما نوع البضائع التي تعتقد أن يكون كروزو اشتراها لبيعها في إفريقيا ؟

Some foods like rice , meat, ...etc .

بعض الاطعمه مثل الأرز واللحم...الخ .

(35) What do you think Crusoe felt when he escaped from the pirates?

ماذا تعتقد كان شعور كروزو عندما هرب من القراصنة ؟

Felt happy and successful .

شعر بالسعادة والنجاح .

(36) Do you think Crusoe was a brave man?

هل تعتقد أن كروزو كان رجل شجاع ؟

Probably, because escaped from the pirates and learned to live alone.

من المحتمل . لأنه هرب من القراصنة وتعلم أن يعيش بمفرده .

(37) Do you think Crusoe was a good trader?

هل تعتقد أن كروزو كان تاجرا جيدا ؟

He was a good trader because he got a lot of money as a trader .

أنه كان تاجر جيد لأنه حصل على أموال كثيرة كتاجر .

(38) Crusoe was lucky. Give examples.

كروزو كان محظوظ . أعط أمثله

The ship captain rescued Crusoe while he was sailing in a small fishing boat.

قائد السفينة أنقذه عندما كان مبحرا في قارب صيد صغير .

When his ship sank in the sea, he was the only survived one .

عندما غرقت السفينة في البحر كان هو الناجي الوحيد .

EXERCISES ON CHAPTER ONE

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) The pirates took Crusoe to Morocco .
- (2) Crusoe woke up on a beach .
- (3) Crusoe bought some goods to sell in Guinea .
- (4) The captain was kind and took Crusoe to Brazil .

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Some pirates took Crusoe 's ships on his way to Africa .
- (2) The storm became worse and the ship started to sink .
- (3) Crusoe found a ship which was sailing to Guinea.
- (4) The captain of the English rescued Guinea .

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe went to Brazil, where he became a farmer and lived happily.
- (2) After a few years, Crusoe wanted to be a trader again .
- (3) In 1659 , He sailed with some friends to Guinea to sell more goods.
- (4) There was a storm and finally the ship started to sink .

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) All the sailors were thrown into the sea.
- (2) Crusoe's ship sailed into a big storm.
- (3) The next morning Crusoe woke up on a beach, but he couldn't see any of his friends.
- (4) The storm became worse and finally the ship started to sink .

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

Answer the following question : -

- (1) What did Crusoe do in Brazil ?

- (2) What did Crusoe decide to do after he was taken to Morocco as a slave ?

- (3) The first night Crusoe slept in a big tree. What does this tell us about Crusoe ?



(4) *Do you think Crusoe was an adventurer ?*

(5) *How did the ship sink ?*

(6) *Who rescued Crusoe from the small boat?*

(7) *Why do you think Crusoe decided to be a trader again ?*

(8) *What dangerous things do you think sailors may face in the sea ?*

(9) *Where did Crusoe sell his goods ?*

(10) *What did Crusoe do in Brazil ?*

(11) *What did Crusoe's parents want him to do ?*

(12) *When did Crusoe go to London ?*

(13) *Who took the ship to Morocco ?*

(14) *How long did Crusoe stay in Morocco ?*

(15) *What did Crusoe do to be safe from dangerous animals or people ?*

(16) *When did Crusoe become a good sailor ?*

Chapter two THE SET TEXT وأحداث الفصل الثانى

- *The next morning Crusoe decided to swim back to the ship before it sank, He found some boxes of rice, cheese and meat. He looked for his friends. But there was no body on the ship, He built a small raft and during the next few days, He went back to the ship many times to collect food, tools , guns, knives and rope .*
- *في صباح اليوم التالي قرر كروزو أن يسبح عائدا إلى السفينة قبل أن تغرق . وجد بعض الصناديق من الأرز والجبن واللحوم 0 بحث عن أصدقائه ولكن لم يكن هناك أحد على السفينة . بنى قاربا صغيرا وخلال الأيام القليلة المقبلة عاد إلى السفينة عدة مرات لجمع الغذاء والأدوات والبنادق والسكاكين والحبال .*
- *That night, there was another storm and the ship sank. Crusoe spent the next few months building a strong fort where he could live. He made a table and chairs and one day He found some goats. He had a lot of things from the ship which were useful. He had a small telescope , a compass, some books , pens, ink and paper. He decided to write a diary every night .*
- *في تلك الليلة كانت هناك عاصفة أخرى وغرقت السفينة . وأمضى كروزو الأشهر القليلة القادمة في بناء حصن قوى حيث يمكنه أن يعيش . قام بصنع منضده وكراسي . وفى أحد الأيام وجد بعضا من الماعز وكان معه الكثير من الأشياء المفيدة من السفينة . كان معه تلسكوب صغير . بوصلة . بعض الكتب والأقلام . الحبر والورق . فقرر أن يكتب مذكراته كل يوم .*
- *When he walked around the island, He found a beautiful valley, In the valley , There were orange and lemon trees and melons. It was beautiful and he decided to build a second house there .*
- *عندما مشى حول الجزيره وجد واديا جميلا . في الوادي هناك أشجار البرتقال والليمون والبطيخ . لقد كان جميلا حيث قرر أن يبني منزلا آخر هناك .*
- *One day , He caught a parrot, He taught it to say some words. This made him very happy . in the next few months, he made some pots for cooking and keeping his food. He had meat from goats and he used his rice to grow more rice*
- *ذات يوم أمسك ببغاء وعلمه أن يقول بعض الكلمات مما جعله سعيدا جدا . في الأشهر القليلة القادمة صنع بعض الاواني وحفظ الطعام . حصل على اللحم من الماعز واستخدم الأرز الذي لديه ليزرع منه المزيد*
- *After three years on the island, He decided to build a boat , He cut down a very large tree and he spent four months building a big boat. But he couldn't push the boat to the beach because it was too big.*

- بعد ثلاث سنوات على الجزيرة قرر بناء قاربا . قام بقطع شجره كبيره جدا وقضى أربعة أشهر في بناء قارب كبير . لكنه لم يتمكن من دفع القارب إلى الشاطئ لأنه كان كبير جدا .
- *In the next few years , Crusoe learned to make clothes from animals skins and he built a smaller boat which he used to sail around the island . He caught some more goats and he made cheese from their milk . His life was good now.*
- في السنوات القليلة القادمة . تعلم كروزو أن يصنع الملابس من جلود الحيوانات . وبني قاربا أصغر استخدمه في الإبحار حول الجزيرة . أصطاد المزيد من الماعز وصنع الجبن من حليبهم . أصبحت حياته جيدة الآن.
- *Then , One day while he was walking along the beach , He saw a man's footprint . He was very afraid and he ran back to his fort . He stayed there for three days and made his fort stronger . a few days later , He saw a fire on the beach and a man's bones . The men who were visiting the island were really dangerous .*
- في يوم من الأيام . بينما كان يمشى بطول الشاطئ . رأى آثار أقدام رجل كان خائفا جدا فجرى عائدا الى حصنه . وظل هناك لمدة 3 أيام وجعل حصنه أقوى . وبعد أيام قليلة شاهد نيرانا على الشاطئ وعظام لرجل . الرجال الذين يزورون الجزيرة كانوا خطيرين جدا .

NEW VOCAPULARY

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Swim back	يسبح عائدا	Look for	يبحث عن	nobody	لا أحد
collect	يجمع	tools	أدوات	guns	بنادق
knives	سكاكين	rope	حبل	fort	حصن
goat	ماعزه	telescope	تليسكوب	compass	بوصله
ink	حبر	diary	مفكره يومية	valley	وادي
melons	بطيخ	parrot	ببغاء	keep	يربى
cut down	يقطع	spend	يقضى	push	يدفع
skins	جلود	walk along	يمشى بطول	footprints	آثار أقدام
afraid	خائف	fire	نار - حريق	bones	عظام
dangerous	خطير	raft	قارب	useful	مفيد
decide	يقرر	storm	عاصفة	man's bones	عظام آدميه
pots	أواني الطهي	lemon tree	شجرة ليمون	walk around	يتجول
catch	يمسك	Hungry	جوعان	Buy	يشترى

www.khawagah.blogspot.com



مدونة خواجه

ترحب بكم

وتتمنى لكم أحلى الأوقات

كل عام وأنتم بخير

EVENTS OF CHAOTER TWO IN ORDER أحداث الفصل الثاني بالترتيب

- Crusoe decided to swim back to the ship before it sank .
- Crusoe found some boxes of rice, cheese and meat .
- Crusoe built a small raft and collected things from the ship .
- Crusoe collected food , tools, guns , knives and rope .
- There was another storm and the ship sank .
- Crusoe built a strong fort where he could live safely .
- He had a telescope , a compass, some books, pens, ink and paper .
- He decided to write a diary every day .
- He found some orange and lemon trees and melons in a beautiful valley .
- He built his second house in the valley .
- Crusoe caught a beautiful parrot and taught it to say some words .
- He made some pots for cooking and keeping his food .
- He caught some goats and had meat and milk from them .
- He used his rice to grow more rice .
- After three years on the island, he decided to build a boat .
- He cut down a very large tree and spent four months building it .
- He couldn't push the boat to the beach because it was too big .
- Crusoe made clothes from animal skins .
- He built a small boat to sail around the island .
- He saw a man's footprint on the beach .
- He was very afraid and ran back to his fort .
- He saw a fire on the beach and a man's bones .

- كروزو قرر أن يسبح عائدا إلى السفينة قبلما أن تغرق .
- كروزو وجد بعض من صناديق الأرز والجبن واللحم .
- صنع كروزو قارباً صغيراً وجمع الأشياء من السفينة .
- هو جمع الطعام والأدوات والبنادق والسكاكين والحبال . * كان يوجد عاصفة أخرى والسفينة غرقت
- كروزو بنى حصن قوى حيث يستطيع أن يعيش بأمان .
- كان لديه تليسكوب وبوصله وبعض الكتب والأقلام والحبر والورق .
- هو قرر أن يكتب ملاحظاته اليومية .
- هو وجد بعض من أشجار البرتقال والليمون والبطيخ في الوادي الجميل .
- هو بنى منزله الثاني في الوادي .
- كروزو أمسك ببغاء جميل وعلمه أن يقول بعض الكلمات .
- هو صنع بعض أواني الطهي للطعام والمحافظة على طعامه .
- هو أمسك بعض الماعز وحصل على اللحم واللبن منهم . * هو استخدم أرزه ليزرع ارضه أكثر .
- كروزو صنع ملابس من جلود الحيوان .
- هو رأى أثر قدم إنسان على الشاطئ .
- هو رأى حريق على الشاطئ وعظام بشر .
- * هو كان خائف جداً وعاد مسرعاً لحصنه .

Questions & Answers

(1) What did Robinson Crusoe find on the ship?

ماذا وجد كروزو على السفينة ؟

He found boxes of rice , cheese and meat .

هو وجد صناديق من البارز والجبن واللحم .

(2) Why did Robinson Crusoe go back to the ship many times ?

لماذا عاد كروزو إلى السفينة العديد من المرات ؟

To collect food , tools , guns and rope .

لكني بجمع الطعام والأدوات والبنادق والحبال .

(3) Why did Crusoe build a strong fort on the island ?

لماذا بنى كروزو حصن قوى على الجزيرة ؟

To live in it and go back to the ship and collect food, guns, etc..... .

لكي يعيش فيه ويعود إلى السفينة ويجمع الطعام والبنادق الخ .

(4) What are the useful things that Crusoe had from the ship ?

ما الأشياء المفيدة التي كانت مع كروزو من السفينة ؟

He had a small telescope , a compass, some books , pens , ink and paper.

كان معه تليسكوب صغير وبوصله وبعض الكتب والأقلام والحبر والورق .

(5) What was the raft made of?

مما صنع القارب ؟

It was made of wood.

انه مصنوع من الخشب .

(6) Why did Crusoe make the raft ?

لماذا صنع كروزو القارب ؟

to go back to the ship to collect things and to sail around the ship .

لكي يعود إلى السفينة ويحضر الأشياء ويتجول حول الجزيرة .

(7) Did Crusoe find his friends on the ship?

هل وجد كروزو أصدقائه على السفينة ؟

NO, There was nobody on the ship .

لا . لم يكن هناك أي شخص على السفينة .

(8) What did Crusoe make ?

ماذا فعل كروزو ؟

He made a table and chairs.

هو صنع منضده وبعض الكراسي .

(9) What did Crusoe use to write a diary?

ماذا استخدم كروزو لكي يكتب ؟

He used pens , ink and paper .

هو استخدم أقلام وحبر وورق .

(10) What did Crusoe decide to write every day ?

ماذا قرر كروزو أن يكتب كل يوم ؟
هو قرر أن يكتب يوميات .

He decided to write a diary

(11) How did the ship sink?

كيف غرقت السفينة ؟
الكثير من المال .

By another storm .

(12) Where did Crusoe build the his second house ? ?

أين كروزو بني بيته الثاني

In the valley .

في الوادي .

(13) What did Crusoe find while he was walking on the island?

ماذا وجد كروزو أثناء تجوله على الجزيرة ؟

He found a beautiful valley.

هو وجد وادي جميل .

(14) What did Crusoe find in the valley?

ماذا كروزو وجد في الوادي ؟

He found orange and lemon trees and melons . وجد الشجار البرتقال والليمون والبطيخ .

(15) What made Crusoe happy in the valley?

ما الذي جعل كروزو سعيد في الوادي ؟

The parrot which he taught to say some words. البيغاء الذي علمه أن يقول بعض الكلمات .

(16) How did Crusoe make things?

كيف كروزو صنع الأشياء ؟

With the tools and hinges he found on the ship.

بالأدوات والأشياء التي وجدها على متن السفينة .

(17) How did Crusoe cook and keep food ?

كيف كروزو طبخ وحفظ الطعام ؟

He made some pots for that.

هو صنع بعض أواني الطهي لذلك .

(18) Why couldn't Crusoe push the he built?

لماذا كروزو لم يستطع أن يدفع القارب الذي صنعه ؟

Because it was too big .

لأنه كان كبير جدا .

(19) How long did it take Crusoe to build a strong fort ?

ما المدة التي أستغرقها كروزو لبنى الحصن ؟

It took few months.

أستغرق شهور قليلة .

(20) How did Crusoe get clothes ?

كيف حصل كروزو على الملابس ؟

He learned to make them from animal skins.

هو أصبح فلاحا وعاش بسعادة .

(21) Why did Crusoe have to make things ?

لماذا كروزو كان مضطر الى أن يصنع الأشياء .

As they weren't available on the island . . لأن هذه الأشياء غير متاحة على الجزيرة .

(22) How did Crusoe make good use of the goats he found ?

كيف كروزو أستغل الماعز التى وجدها على الجزيرة ؟

He had meat from them and made cheese from their milk and made clothes from their skin .

أخذ لحمها وصنع الجبن من لبنها والملابس من جلودها .

(23) What did Crusoe decide to do after three years on the island ?

ماذا قرر كروزو أن يفعل بعد 3 سنوات على الجزيرة ؟

He decided to build a boat .

هو قرر أن يبنى قارباً .

(24) What did Crusoe use the rice for ?

فيما استخدم كروزو الأرز الذي كان لديه ؟

He used it to grow more rice.

هو أستخدم الأرز لزيادة أرز أكثر .

(25) How did Crusoe build the big boat ?

كيف كروزو بني القارب الكبير ؟

He cut down a large tree and used its wood to make it .

هو قطع شجرة كبيرة وأستخدم أخشابها لصناعتها .

(26) What did Crusoe see while he was walking along the beach ?

ماذا رأى كروزو بينما هو كان يتجول على الجزيرة ؟

He saw a man's footprint .

هو رأى أثر قدم إنسان .

(27) What did Crusoe do after he saw the man's footprint ?

ماذا كروزو فعل عندما هو رأى أثر قدم إنسان ؟

He ran back to his fort and stayed for three days and made his fort stronger.

هو عاد مسرعاً إلى حصنه وظل هناك لمدة 3 أيام وجعله أكثر قوة .

(28) What made Crusoe afraid ?

ما الذي جعل كروزو خائفاً ؟

He saw man's footprint on the island.

هو رأى قدم إنسان على الجزيرة .

(29) What did Crusoe finally see on the beach ?

ماذا كروزو رأى على الشاطئ فى النهاية ؟

He saw a fire and a man's bones.

هو رأى نارا وعظام إنسان .

(30) How were the people who were visiting the island ?

كيف كان الناس الذين كانوا يزورون الجزيرة ؟

They were really dangerous.

هم كانوا خطيرين جداً .

(31) How did Crusoe know that the visitors of the island were?

كيف عرف كروزو أن زوار الجزيرة كانوا خطيرين ؟

He saw a fire on the beach and a man's bones .

هو رأى على الشاطئ نارا وعظام إنسان .

أسئلة التفكير النقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

(1) Why do you think Crusoe decide to build a fort not a house?

لماذا تعتقد أن كروزو بني حصنا وليس منزلا؟

Because forts are strong and safe and there are dangerous men on the island.

لأنه الحصون قوية وأمنه وهناك رجال خطيرين على الجزيرة.

(2) How did Crusoe 's life as a farmer in Brazil help him on the island ?

كيف ساعدت حياة كروزو كفلاح فى البرازيل على العيش على الجزيره ؟

It helped him to grow rice and make things from wood.

ساعدته أن يزرع الأرز ويصنع أشياء من الخشب .

(3) Why do you think Crusoe decide to build a second house?

لماذا تعتقد أن كروزو قرر أن يبني منزل ثان ؟

As it was a beautiful valley where there were orange, lemon, trees and melons .

لأن الوادي كان جميلا حيث يوجد أشجار برتقال وليمون وبطيخ .

(4) Crusoe had a telescope , a compass and some tools, Which of these things do you think was the most useful ? why ?

كروزو كان لديه تليسكوب وبوصله وبعض الأدوات. أي من هذه الأشياء تعتقد أنها الأكثر فائدة ولماذا ؟

I think that the gun to protect himself if there's an enemy .

أعتقد أن البندقية هي الأكثر نفعاً ليحمي نفسه لو أن هناك عدو .

(5) Why was Crusoe afraid when he saw the man's footprint on the beach ?

لماذا كان كروزو خائفا عندما رأى أثر قدم إنسان على الشاطئ ؟

Because he knew that there was someone else on the island .

لأنه أدرك بذلك وجود شخص آخر على الجزيرة .

(6) Why do you think Crusoe was happy when his parrot learnt to say some words?

لماذا تعتقد أن كروزو كان سعيد عندما تعلم الببغاء أن يقول بعض الكلمات ؟

So that he would have some company on the island .

لأنه بذلك سيكون لديه صحبة على الجزيرة .

(7) Why do you think Crusoe built a small boat to sail around the island?

لماذا تعتقد أن كروزو بني قارب صغير ليجر حول الجزيرة؟

Perhaps to see what else he could find on the island.

ربما لكي يرى ماذا يمكن أن يجد أيضا على الجزيرة.

**EXERCISES ON CHAPTER TWO****A - Put the events into the correct order**

- (1) Crusoe decided to build a boat , So he cut down a very large tree.
- (2) He caught some goats and made cheese from their milk .
- (3) The boat was too big , So Crusoe couldn't push it .
- (4) Crusoe used his rice to grow more rice.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Another storm made the ship sink .
- (2) Crusoe built a small raft and collected things from the ship.
- (3) Crusoe looked for his friends, but there was nobody on the ship.
- (4) Crusoe used the pens , ink and paper to write a diary every day.

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) He caught a beautiful parrot and taught it to say some words.
- (2) The things Crusoe found on the ship were telescope, a compass, some books, ink and paper .
- (3) He found some orange and lemon trees in a beautiful valley.
- (4) In the valley, Crusoe built a second house .

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) A few days later, He saw a fire on the beach and a man's bones.
- (2) Crusoe collected things from the ship and built a small raft.
- (3) Crusoe saw a man's footprint on the beach.
- (4) Crusoe built a strong fort where he could live.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) One day while Crusoe was walking along the beach , He saw a man's footprint .
- (2) There was another storm and the ship sank.
- (3) Crusoe found some boxes of rice , cheese and meat on the ship before it sank.
- (4) Crusoe found a beautiful valley in the island.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe had a telescope , a compass , some books and pens.
- (2) After three days on the island, Crusoe decided to build a boat.
- (3) Crusoe decided to swim back to the ship before it sank.
- (4) Crusoe couldn't push the boat to the beach because it was too big.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe decided to write a diary every day .
- (2) Crusoe built a small boat to sail.
- (3) Crusoe found some boxes of rice, cheese and meat.
- (4) Crusoe made clothes from animal's skins.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) He caught a beautiful parrot and taught it to say some words.
- (2) He saw a man's footprint on the beach.
- (3) He cut down in a large tree and built a big boat.
- (4) He caught some goats and made cheese from their milk.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) He built a strong fort where he could live
- (2) He found some orange and lemon trees in a beautiful valley.
- (3) He decided to start writing a diary.
- (4) Crusoe built a small raft and collected things from the ship.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe used his rice to grow more rice .
- (2) Crusoe was very afraid and ran back to his fort.
- (3) Crusoe built a strong fort where he could live.
- (4) Crusoe saw a fire on the beach and a man's footprint.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe found some orange and lemon trees in a beautiful valley .
- (2) Crusoe saw a man's footprint on the beach.
- (3) Crusoe built a small raft and collected things from the ship.
- (4) Crusoe was very afraid and ran back to his fort.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----



Answer the following question : -

(1) How could Crusoe collect tools from the ship ?

.....

(2) Why did the ship sink after Crusoe collected the tools from it ?

.....

(3) On the beach, There were a fire and a man's footprint, How was that dangerous ?

.....

(4) Crusoe was a good farmer , How?

.....

(5) Crusoe made things, " Give three examples "

.....

(6) Why did Crusoe Build the second small boat?

.....

(7) What do you think the most important job that helped Crusoe to live on the island ?

.....

(8) Do you think Crusoe was happy on the island ? why / Why not ?

.....

(9) What did Crusoe bring from the ship before it sank ?

.....

(10) Why couldn't Crusoe sail around the island?

.....



(11) Why did Crusoe go back to the ship many times ?

.....

.....

(12) Why did Crusoe build the a second house in the valley ?

.....

.....

(13) When did Crusoe decide to build a boat ?

.....

.....

(14) What did Crusoe catch ?

.....

.....

(15) What did Crusoe use his rice for?

.....

.....

(16) Why did Crusoe build a raft ?

.....

.....

(17) Who did Crusoe look for on the ship ?

.....

.....

(18) What did the storm cause to the ship

.....

.....

(19) How could Crusoe write a diary every day?

.....

.....

(20) What were there in the beautiful valley ?

.....

.....

(21) How did Crusoe feel after catching the parrot ?

.....

.....

(22) Why did Crusoe make some pots ?

.....

.....

THE SET TEXT

وأحداث الفصل الثالث

- After Crusoe found the footprint on the beach ,He didn't feel safe. He was worried about the dangerous men , but they didn't come back to the island . For the next few years, Crusoe lived quietly. He had a lot of food , He worked hard and he wrote his diary at night .

* بعدما عثر كروزو على آثار أقدام على الشاطئ . أصبح لا يشعر بالأمان . وكان يشعر بالقلق من الرجال الخطيرين ولكنهم لم يعودوا إلى الجزيرة . فى السنوات القليلة القادمة كروزو عاش بهدوء كان لديه الكثير من الطعام . ناضل وكتب مذكراته فى الليل .

- One day, 22 years after he arrived on the island, Crusoe found the dangerous men again. He was really afraid but , The men quickly left the island, A year later, While he was walking on a hill, He heard some guns . He ran to the top of the hill . With his telescope, He saw a large Spanish ship which was slowly sinking into the sea .

* وذات يوم بعد 22 عام من وصوله إلى الجزيرة . شاهد كروزو الرجال الخطيرين مرة أخرى . وكان خائفا حقا لكن الرجال غادروا الجزيرة بسرعة . وبعد ذلك بعام واحد . بينما كان يسير على تل سمع صوت بعض البنادق . جرى إلى قمة التل . وبواسطة تليسكوبه . رأى سفينة إسبانية كبيرة كانت تغرق ببطء فى البحر .

- Crusoe sailed to the ship in his small boat , but there was nobody on the ship. He found some useful cooking pots, clothes and a bag of gold and silver coins

* أبحر كروزو بقاربه الصغير إلى السفينة ولكن لم يكن هناك أحد على السفينة فوجد قدر طهي مفيدة وملابس وحقيبة من العملات الذهبية والفضية .

- A year and half later, Crusoe saw five small boats on the beach and some dangerous men. These men had a prisoner with them, but the prisoner escaped and ran up the beach . Crusoe quickly rescued the man . □

* وبعد عام ونصف العام رأى كروزو خمسة قوارب صغيرة على الشاطئ وبعض الرجال الخطيرين وكان هؤلاء الرجال معهم سجين . ولكنه هرب وفر على الشاطئ فقام كروزو بإنقاذ الرجل بسرعة .

- * The man who Crusoe saved wanted to be his slave. But Crusoe didn't want a slave, He wanted a friend. He took the man to his house in the valley and called him Friday because that was the day when he rescued him .

* الرجل الذي أنقذه كروزو أراد أن يكون عبدا له ولكن كروزو لم يكن يريد عبدا بل كان يريد صديقا . أخذ الرجل إلى منزله فى الوادي وأطلق عليه (فريداى) لأن ذلك هو اليوم الذي أنقذ فيه حياته .

* Crusoe was really happy to have a friend and he taught Friday to speak English. They spent the next three days very happily on the island. They told stories , talked and laughed a lot .

*كروزو أصبح سعيدا حقا بعدما أصبح لديه صديق وعلم فريداى التكلم بالانجليزية. قضوا السنوات الثلاث التالية فى سعادة غامرة على الجزيرة . أخبروا بعضهم القصص وتحدثوا وضحكوا كثيرا .

- One day, Friday ran back to the raft because he saw the dangerous men on the beach again . They had a prisoner with them, So Crusoe and Friday thought of a plan and rescued the prisoner . He was a Spanish sailor .

• فى يوم من الأيام جرى فريداى عائدا إلى الحصن لأنه رأى الرجال الخطيرين على الشاطئ مرة أخرى . وكان معهم سجين. فكر كروزو وفريداى فى خطه وأنقذوا السجين وكان بحارا اسبانيا .

- Then Crusoe and Friday discovered a second prisoner on the beach , It was a very big surprise because the man was Friday's father . Friday was really happy and he danced and laughed . The four men went back to Crusoe's fort where they ate some food and rested .

• ثم اكتشف كروزو وفريداى سجيناً ثانياً على الشاطئ . كانت مفاجأة كبيرة لأن الرجل كان والد فريداى . كان فريداى سعيدا للغاية . وقام بالرقص والضحك بصوت عال . عاد الرجال الاربعة إلى حصن كروزو حيث تناولوا بعض الطعام واستراحوا .

NEW VOCAPULARY

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Feel safe	يشعر	Come back	يرجع	quietly	بهدوء
Worried about	قلق بشأن	Spanish	اسباني	gold	ذهب
silver	فضه	coins	عملات معدنية	prisoner	سجين
laugh	يضحك	plan	يخطط	discover	يكتشف
surprise	مفاجأة	loudly	بصوت عالى	rest	يستريح
sailor	بحار	dance	يرقص	go back	يعود
really	حقا	hill	تل	pot	قدر - حله
half	نصف	at night	ليلا	leave	يترك
large	ضخم	save	ينقذ	bones	عظام

EVENTS OF CHAOTER THREE IN ORDER أحداث الفصل الثالث بالترتيب

- Crusoe was worried about the dangerous men .
- He worked hard and wrote his diary at night .
- The dangerous men came to the island again, but they quickly left .
- Crusoe heard some guns while walking on the hill.
- He saw a large Spanish ship sinking into the sea with his telescope .
- Crusoe sailed to the ship in his small boat .
- He found clothes, cooking pots and a bag of gold and silver coins .
- Crusoe saw some dangerous men on five boats with a prisoner .
- The prisoner escaped and ran up the beach .
- Crusoe rescued the prisoner and called him Friday .
- Crusoe was really happy to have a friend .
- Crusoe taught Friday to speak English .
- They told stories , talked and laughed a lot .
- Friday saw the dangerous men on the beach again .
- The dangerous men had a prisoner with them .
- Crusoe and Friday rescued the prisoner .
- They discovered that the prisoner was Friday's father .
- They all went back to Crusoe's fort and ate some food and rested .

- كروزو كان قلق حول الرجال الخطيرين .
- هو عمل بجد وكتب مذكراته اليومية ليلا .
- الرجال الخطيرين أتوا إلى الجزيرة مرة ثانية لكنهم بسرعة تركوها .
- سمع كروزو بعض أصوات البنادق بينما هو كان يتجول على التل .
- هو رأى سفينة اسبانية كبيرة تغرق في البحر بجهاز التليسكوب .
- أبحر كروزو إلى السفينة بقاربه الصغير .
- هو وجد ملابس وأواني وشنطة ذهب و عملات فضيه .
- رأى كروزو بعض الرجال الخطيرين في خمسة قوارب مع سجين .
- السجين هرب وجرى إلى الشاطئ .
- أنقذ كروزو السجين وسماه فريداى .
- كروزو كان سعيد حقا لان لديه صديق .
- علم كروزو فريداى أن يتحدث الانجليزية .
- هم أخبروا القصص وتحدثوا وضحكوا كثيرا .
- فريداى رأى الرجال الخطيرين على الشاطئ مرة ثانية .
- الرجال الخطيرين كان معهم سجين آخر .
- كروزو وفريداى أنقذوا السجين .
- هم اكتشفوا ان السجين كان والد فريداى .
- كلهم عادوا إلى حصن كروزو وأكلوا بعض الطعام واستراحوا .

Questions & Answers

الفصل الثالث

(1) How did Crusoe feel when he found a footprint on the beach ?

كيف شعر كروزو عندما وجد آثار قدم على الشاطئ ؟

He didn't feel safe .

هو شعر بعدم الأمان .

(2) How did Robinson Crusoe live for the next few years ?

كيف عاش كروزو السنوات القليلة المقبلة ؟

He Lived quietly .

هو عاش بهدوء .

(3) Who did Crusoe see after 22 years on the island ?

من الذي رآه كروزو بعد 22 سنة على الجزيرة ؟

He saw the dangerous men again .

هو رأى الرجال الخطيرين مرة أخرى .

(4) When didn't Crusoe feel safe ?

متى لم يشعر كروزو بالأمان ؟

After he found the footprint on the beach ..

بعدما وجد أثر القدم على الشاطئ .

(5) How did Crusoe feel about the dangerous men ?

كسف شعر كروزو تجاه الرجال الخطيرين .

He felt worried

هو شعر بالقلق .

(6) Did the dangerous men stay on the island ?

هل ظل الرجال الخطيرين مرة أخرى ؟

No , They didn't , They quickly left the island ..

لا . رحلوا بسرعة عن الجزيرة .

(7) What did Crusoe do when he heard some guns ?

ماذا كروزو فعل عندما سمع صوت البنادق ؟

He ran to the top of the hill .

هو جرى إلى أعلى التل .

(7) When did Crusoe hear some guns ?

متى سمع كروزو صوت البنادق ؟

While he was walking on the hill.

بينما هو كان يمشى على التل .

(8) How did Crusoe see the Spanish ship?

كيف كروزو رأى السفينة الاسبانية؟

By using a telescope .

باستخدام التليسكوب .

(9) How did Crusoe work on the island?

كيف عمل كروزو على الجزيرة ؟

He worked hard .

هو عمل بجد .

(10) What did Crusoe see with his telescope from the top of the hill ?

ماذا رأى كروزو بتليسكوبه من على قمة التل ؟

He saw a large Spanish ship which was slowly sinking into the sea .

هو رأى سفينة اسبانية كبيره كانت تغرق ببطء فى البحر .

(11) How did he sail to the Spanish ship?

كيف أبحر الى السفينة الاسبانية؟

In his small boat .

فى قاربته الصغير .

(12) Did Crusoe see people on the ship ?

هل كروزو رأى بشر على السفينة ؟

No, There were no people on the ship ..

لا . لم يوجد أى شخص على السفينة .

(13) What did Crusoe find on the Spanish ship?

ماذا وجد كروزو على السفينة الاسبانية ؟

He found cooking pots , clothes and a bag of gold and silver coins .

هو وجد أواني طبخ وملابس وحقيبه بها عملات ذهبية وفضية .

(14) How many boats did Crusoe see on the beach ?

كم عدد القوارب التي رآها كروزو على الشاطئ؟

He saw five boats .

هو رأى خمسة قوارب .

(15) What did the prisoner of the dangerous men do?

ماذا فعل سجين الرجال الخطيرين؟

He escaped and ran up to the beach .

هو هرب وجرى الى الشاطئ .

(16) What did Crusoe do to the man who escaped from the dangerous men?

ماذا فعل كروزو مع الرجل الذي هرب من الرجال الخطيرين ؟

He rescued him.

هم أنقذوه .

(17) What did The rescued man want from Crusoe?

ماذا أراد الرجل الذي أنقذه كروزو؟

He wanted to be Crusoe's slave.



هو أراد أن يكون عبدا لكرزو .

(18) Did Crusoe agree to have the rescued man as his slave?

هل كروزو وافق أن يكون الرجل الذي أنقذه عبدا له؟

No , He didn't , He wanted him to be his friend.

لا ولكنه أراد أن يكون صديقه.

(19) What name did Crusoe give to his new friend ? why ??

ما الاسم الذي أطلقه كروزو على صديقه الجديد ؟ ولماذا ؟؟

He called him Friday because that was the day when he rescued him .

هو أطلق عليه أسم (فريداى) لأنه أنقذه يوم الجمعة .

(20) Did Crusoe accept the prisoner's offer to be his slave ? Why ?

هل كروزو قبل عرض السجين أن يكون عبدا له ؟ ولماذا ؟؟

No, He didn't because he wanted a friend.

لا لم يقبله لأنه كان محتاجا الى صديق.

(21) What did Crusoe teach Friday ?

ماذا علم كروزو فريداى ؟

He taught him to speak English .

هو علمه أن يتحدث الانجليزي .

(22) How do you know that Crusoe and Friday lived happily?

كيف عرفت أن كروزو وفريداى عاشوا سعداء ؟

They lived together in Crusoe's house . they told stories , talked and laughed a lot

كروزو وفريداى عاشوا معا في منزل كروزو وحكى قصصا وتحدثا وضحكا كثيرا .

(23) Why did Friday run back to the fort one day ?

لماذا عاد فريداى سريعا الى الحصن ؟

Because he saw the dangerous men on the beach again.

لأنه رأى الرجال الخطيرين على الشاطئ مرة أخرى .

(24) What did Crusoe and Friday think about to save the prisoner from the dangerous men ?

فيما فكر كروزو وفريداى لإنقاذ السجين من الرجال الخطيرين ؟

They thought of a plan to rescue the prisoner .

هم فكروا في خطه لإنقاذ السجين .

(25) What nationality was the prisoner ?

ما هى جنسية السجين؟

He was a Spanish sailor .

هو كان بحارا اسبانيا .

(26) What surprise did Friday get for the second prisoner?

ما المفاجأة الى حدثت لفريداي بالنسبة للسجين الثاني؟

He was Friday's father.

هو كان والد فريداي.

(27) How did Friday feel when he saw his father?

كيف شعر فريداي عندما رأى والده؟

He was very happy. He danced and laughed loudly.

هو كان سعيدا ورقص وضحك بصوت عال.

(28) Where did the four men go ? Why ?

أين ذهب الأربعة رجال ؟ ولماذا ؟؟

They went to Crusoe's fort to eat some food and rest .

هم ذهبوا الى حصن كروزو لياكلوا بعض الطعام ويستريحوا .

أسئلة التفكير النقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

(1) Why do you think Crusoe wrote in his diary every night ?

لماذا تعتقد أن كروزو كتب مذكراته كل يوم؟

To write every thing happening to him during the day .

لكي يكتب كل شيء يحدث له أثناء اليوم .

(2) In what way was his telescope useful ?

الى أى مدى كان منظاره مفيد ؟

He could see the Spanish ship with it.

هو أستطاع أن يرى به السفينة الاسبانية.

(3) Do you think Crusoe found it easy or difficult to have three men on the island with him ?

هل تعتقد أنه كان من السهل أم من الصعب على كروزو أن يجد ثلاثة رجال معه على الجزيرة ؟

I think it was difficult because the three men were with some dangerous men.

أعتقد أنه كان صعبا على كروزو لأن الرجال الثلاثة كانوا فى حوزة رجال خطيرين.

(4) Do you think Crusoe will ever leave the island and return to England ?

Why ? Why not ?

هل تعتقد أن كروزو سوف يترك الجزيرة يوم اما ويعود الى انجلترا ؟ لماذا ؟ ولما لا ؟

I think He will leave it one day to see his parents and marry.

أعتقد أنه سوف يترك الجزيرة يوما ما ليرى والديه ويتزوج .

I think He won't leave it because he lives happily with the three men.

أعتقد أنه لن يترك الجزيرة لأنه يعيش فى سعادة مع الرجال الثلاثة.

(5) Why did Crusoe teach Friday to speak English ?

لماذا علم كروزو فريداى أن يتكلم الانجليزية ؟

To be able to talk together.

حتى يتمكنوا أن يتحدثوا معا .

(6) Was Crusoe right to live alone for years on an island ? Why ? Why not ??

هل كان كروزو على حق عندما عاش وحيدا على الجزيرة لسنوات عديدة ؟ لما ؟ ولما لا

Yes , He was right. He had a safe house to live in , He had food to eat and clothes to wear .

نعم كان على حق حيث كان لديه منزلا آمنا ليعيش فيه وطعاما ليأكله وملابس ليرتديها .

No, He was wrong . He should have left the island to live happily with his relatives and friends . Dangerous men came more than once the island.

لا لم يكن على حق كان عليه أن يترك الجزيرة ليعيش مع أقاربه وأصدقائه بسعادة وبجانب ذلك فقد جاء الرجال الخطيرين أكثر من مره على الجزيرة .

(7) Give an example that Crusoe was a brave man ?

أعطى مثلا يوضح أن كروزو كان رجلا شجاعا ؟

He could save three prisoners from the dangerous men.

أستطاع أن ينقذ ثلاث سجناء من الرجال الخطيرين .

EXERCISES ON CHAPTER TWO

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe and Friday discovered a second prisoner on the beach and he was Friday's father .
- (2) Crusoe saved Friday from the dangerous men.
- (3) The four men went back to Crusoe's fort where they ate some food and rested .
- (4) Crusoe and Friday saved the Spanish sailor from the dangerous men.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe took the man to his house in the valley and called him Friday.
- (2) But Crusoe didn't want a slave, He wanted a friend .
- (3) Crusoe saved a prisoner from the dangerous men.
- (4) The prisoner wanted to be Crusoe's slave .

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe heard some guns while walking on the hill.
- (2) The dangerous men came to the island again , but they left quickly .
- (3) He worked hard and wrote his diary at night.
- (4) Crusoe was worried about the dangerous men.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----



A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe saw some dangerous men on five boats.
- (2) The prisoner escaped and ran up to the beach.
- (3) Crusoe saw a large Spanish ship into the sea with his telescope.
- (4) Crusoe built a strong fort where he could live.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe and Friday told stories, talked and laughed a lot .
- (2) Crusoe taught Friday to speak English.
- (3) Crusoe was really happy to have a friend.
- (4) Crusoe rescued the prisoner and called him Friday.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe and Friday discovered that the prisoner was Friday's father.
- (2) The four men all went back to Crusoe's fort and ate some food.
- (3) The dangerous men had a prisoner with them.
- (4) Crusoe and Friday rescued the prisoner.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe saw five boats and some dangerous men on the beach .
- (2) The man who Crusoe saved wanted to be his slave.
- (3) The dangerous men had a prisoner.
- (4) Crusoe didn't want a slave , but he wanted a friend.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) The four men ate food and rested.
- (2) Because Friday saw the dangerous men , He ran back to the fort.
- (3) The second prisoner on the beach was Friday's father.
- (4) Crusoe and Friday thought of a plan and rescued the Spanish sailor.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) When Crusoe saw the dangerous men again , He ran back to the fort.
- (2) Crusoe wrote his diary at night.
- (3) Crusoe found the footprint on the beach.
- (4) Crusoe was worried about the dangerous men.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----



A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *On the Spanish ship, Crusoe found some cooking pots .*
- (2) *With his telescope, Crusoe saw a large Spanish ship.*
- (3) *While he was walking on a hill, he heard some guns.*
- (4) *Crusoe sailed to the ship in his small boat.*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *Crusoe called the prisoner Friday .*
- (2) *The two men told stories, talked and laughed a lot.*
- (3) *Crusoe took the prisoner to his house in the valley.*
- (4) *Crusoe taught Friday to speak English.*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *The Second prisoner was discovered on the beach by Crusoe and Friday .*
- (2) *Crusoe wanted a friend not a slave.*
- (3) *On the beach, Crusoe found five small boats.*
- (4) *The four men went back to Crusoe's fort.*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *At night, Crusoe wrote his diary .*
- (2) *After Crusoe found the footprint on the beach, He didn't feel safe.*
- (3) *For the next few years, Crusoe lived quietly.*
- (4) *The dangerous men didn't come back to the island, but Crusoe was worried .*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

أسئلته عامه على الفصل الثالث

1) *How many prisoners did Crusoe save?*

2) *How was Crusoe's life on the island after making friends ?*

3) *Why do you think diaries might be important or useful ?*

4) *Do you think Crusoe could live happily with the three men? Why ?
Why not?*



- 5) How was Crusoe after he saw a footprint on the beach?
- 6) Where did Friday live on the island ?
- 7) " Crusoe went to the top of the hill " What did that tell us a bout his character ?
- 8) Why was Crusoe worried ?
- 9) How much food did v have on the island ?
- 10) What did Crusoe do at night ?
- 11) How did Crusoe feel when he saw the dangerous men again ?
- 12) What did v hear while he was walking on he hill ?
- 13) Where did Crusoe go when he heard some guns ?
- 14) How did the Spanish ship sink into the sea ?
- 15) What did Crusoe find on the Spanish ship?
- 16) How did Crusoe reach the Spanish ship ?
- 17) Where did Crusoe take Friday after he rescued him ?
- 18) What language did Friday learn ?
- 19) What did Friday do when he saw the dangerous men again ?
- 20) Why did Crusoe and Friday think of a plan ?
- 21) When did Crusoe rescue Friday ?
- 22) Why didn't Crusoe want Friday to be his slave ?

23) What did Crusoe and Friday enjoy their time on the island ?

24) Who saw the dangerous men again?

25) Why was Friday very surprised when they found another prisoner on the island ?

26) How could Crusoe see the Spanish ship ?

27) Who did Crusoe and Friday rescue from the dangerous men ?

28) Who was the second prisoner ?

The Set Text وأحداث الفصل الرابع

- The four men became good friends and they lived happily on the island . One day Crusoe was surprised to see on English ship . A small boat sailed to the island and some sailors brought three prisoners from the ship.
• أصبح الرجال الاربعه أصدقاء جدين . وعاشوا في سعادة على الجزيرة في يوم من الأيام فوجئ كروزو بسفينة انجليزية . وأبحر قارب صغير إلى الجزيرة . حيث أحضر بعض البحارة ثلاثة سجناء من السفينة
- Crusoe watched the men and learned that the three men prisoners were also sailors from the ship . One of the men was the ship's captain who was with two friends . The people who took them to the island were mutineers and now they were looking around the island .
• شاهد كروزو الرجال وعلم أن السجناء الثلاثة كانوا أيضا بحاره من السفينة . وأن أحد الرجال كان قبطان السفينة وكان مع اثنين من أصدقائه . والأشخاص الذين نقلوهم إلى الجزيرة كانوا من المتمردين وهم الآن يتجولون حول الجزيرة .
- Crusoe and Friday were brave and they rescued the English captain and his two friends . Then they captured the mutineers and they took back the English ship .
• كان كروزو وفريداى شجاعان وقاما بإتقاذ القبطان الانجليزي وصديقيه . ثم أسرا المتمردين واستردوا السفينة الانجليزية .
- The English captain wanted to thank Crusoe for his help . He made a special meal and then he gave Crusoe his ship . Crusoe was really happy . He didn't want to hurt the mutineers , So He let them stay on the island . On 19 December 1686, Crusoe left the island and sailed back to England with Friday and the ship's captain .
• أراد الكابتن الانجليزي أن يشكر كروزو على مساعدته . أعد وجبه خاصة لكروزو وأعطاه سفينته .

كان كروزو سعيدا للغاية . لم يرد كروزو إيذاء المتمردين . فسمح لهم بالبقاء على الجزيرة . وفى يوم التاسع عشر من ديسمبر عام 1686 . غادر كروزو الجزيرة وأبحر عائدا إلى إنجلترا مع فريداى وقبطان السفينة .

- When Crusoe returned to England, He married and had three children. Sadly, eight years later , His wife died and he decided to visit his island again He stayed there for three weeks and he helped the people who were living there .
وعندما عاد كروزو إلى إنجلترا تزوج كروزو وأصبح لديه ثلاثة أولاد . للأسف . بعد ثماني سنوات . ماتت زوجته فقرر زيارة الجزيرة مرة أخرى . وظل هناك لمدة ثلاثة أسابيع . ساعد الناس الذين يعيشون هناك .
- Crusoe felt sad when he left the island, When he returned to England, He found it difficult to be happy , and after a few years, He decided to go to sea again and worked as a trader . He wanted to use his experience to help other sailors when they travelled through dangerous seas .
شعر كروزو بالحزن عندما غادر الجزيرة . وعندما عاد إلى إنجلترا . تبين أنه من الصعب أن يكون سعيدا بعد بضع سنوات . فقرر أن يذهب إلى البحر مرة أخرى وأن يعمل تاجرا . وأراد أن يستغل خبرته لمساعدة البحارة الآخرين عندما يسافرون في البحر الخطيرة .

NEW VOCAPULARY

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
bring	يحضر	mutineers	متمردين	capture	يأسر
hurt	يؤذى	let	يدع	marry	يتزوج
experience	خبره	prisoner	سجين	look around	يحوم حول
take back	يسترد	special	خاص	meal	وجبه
return	يعود	wife	زوجه	die	يموت
trader	تاجر	through	خلال - عبر	give	يمنح - يعطى
sadly	بحزن	thieves	لصوص	firefighters	رجال المطافئ

EVENTS OF CHAPTER THREE IN ORDER أحداث الفصل الثالث بالترتيب

- The four men became good friends and lived happily on the island.
- A small boat sailed to the island and brought three prisoners .
- One of the men was the ship's captain .
- The people who took them to the island were mutineers .
- Crusoe and Friday rescued the English captain and two sailors .
- They captured the mutineers and took back the English ship .
- The English captain thanked Crusoe and gave him his ship .
- Crusoe didn't want to hurt the mutineers and let them stay on the island .
- Crusoe left the island and sailed back to England .
- In England , Crusoe married and had three children .
- After his wife died , Crusoe decided to visit the island again .
- Crusoe decided to go to sea again and work as a trader .
- He wanted to use his experience to help the other sailors .

- الرجال الاربعة أصبحوا أصدقاء جبين وعاشوا بسعادة على الجزيره .
- قارب صغير أبحر الى الجزيرة وأحضر ثلاثة سجناء .
- واحد من الرجال كان قبطان السفينه .
- الناس الذين أخذوهم الى الجزيرة كانوا متمردين .
- كروزو وفريداى أنقذوا القبطان الانجليزى والاثنين البحارة .
- هم أسروا المتمردين واستردوا السفينه الانجليزى .
- القبطان الانجليز شكر كروزو وأعطاه سفينه .
- كروزو لم يريد أن يؤذى المتمردين وتركهم يقيموا على الجزيرة .
- كروزو ترك الجزيرة وأبحر عائدا الى انجلترا .
- فى انجلترا كروزو تزوج وكان لديه ثلاثة أطفال .
- بعد وفاة زوجته قرر كروزو أن يزور الجزيره مرة ثانيه .
- قرر كروزو أن يذهب الى البحر مرة ثانيه ويعمل كساحل .
- هو أراد أن يستخدم خبرته لكي يساعد البحارة الزاخرين .

Questions & Answers

الفصل الرابع

(1) Why was Crusoe surprised ?

لماذا كروزو كان مندهش؟

Because he saw an English ship.

هو شعر بعدم الأمان .

(2) Who did the sailors bring from the ship ?

من الذي أحضره البحارة من السفينه؟

They brought three prisoners .

هو عاش بهدوء .

(3) What were the three prisoners?

من هم هؤلاء الثلاثة سجناء؟

They were sailors from the ship (the captain and two friends) .

أنهم كانوا بحاره من السفينه (القبطان وأثنين من أصدقائه) .

(3) How did the four men live on the island ?

كيف عاش الأربعة رجال على الجزيرة ؟

They lived happily.

هم عاشوا بسعادة .

(3) How did Crusoe feel when he saw the English ship ?

بما شعر كروزو عندما رأى السفينه؟

He was surprised.

هو كان مندهش جدا .

(3) How were the prisoners brought to the island ?

كيف تم إحضار السجناء الثلاثة الى الجزيرة ؟

In a small boat .

فى قارب صغير .

(4) Who took the captain and his two friends to the island?

من الذي أخذ القبطان وصديقيه إلى الجزيرة؟

The mutineers .

المتمردين .

(5) What are the mutineers?

من هم المتمردين ؟

They are sailors or soldiers that are against their leader and don't carry out his order .

هم بحاره أو جنود ضد قائدهم ولا ينفذوا أوامره .

(6) What did Crusoe and Friday do for the prisoners ?

ماذا فعل كروزو وفريداى للسجناء الثلاثة ؟

They rescued them .

هم أنقذوهم .

(7) How did Crusoe and Friday help the prisoners ?

كيف ساعد كروزو وفريداى السجناء الثلاثة ؟

They rescued them and captured the mutineers .

هم أنقذوهم واسروا المتمردين .

(7) What else did Crusoe and Friday do after rescuing the prisoners ?

ماذا فعل كروزو وفريداى بعد انقاذ السجناء ؟

They captured the mutineers and took back the English ship.

هم أسروا المتمردين واستردوا السفينة .

(8) Show that Crusoe and Friday were brave ?

بين أن كروزو وفريداى كانوا شجعان ؟

- They rescued the captain and his friends .

- They captured the mutineers

- They took back the English ship .

- هم أنقذوا القبطان وأصدقائه . - قاموا بأسر المتمردين - هم استردوا السفينة .

(9) What did the English captain do to thank Crusoe ?

ماذا فعل القبطان الانجليزي لكي يشكر كروزو؟

He made him a special meal and gave Crusoe his ship.

هو صنع له وجبه خاصة وأعطاه سفينته .

(10) How was Crusoe kind to the mutineers?

كيف كان كروزو طيبا مع المتمردين ؟

What did Crusoe do with the mutineers?

ماذا فعل كروزو مع المتمردين ؟

- He didn't want to hurt them .

لم يريد أن يؤذيهم .

- He let them stay on the island again .

سمح لهم بالبقاء على الجزيرة .

(11) When did Crusoe come back to England?

متى عاد كروزو الى انجلترا؟

On 19th December 1686 .

فى 19 سبتمبر 1686 .

(12) Where did Crusoe go after leaving the island ?

اين كروزو ذهب بعد مغادرة الجزيرة ؟

He sailed back to England

أبحر عائدا الى انجلترا .



(13) Who sailed to England with Crusoe?

من أبحر الى انجلترا مع كروزو؟
فريداى وقبطان السفينه .

Friday and the ship's captain

(14) When did Crusoe marry?

متى تزوج كروزو؟
بعدما عاد الى انجلترا .

After he returned to England.

(15) How many children did Crusoe have?

ما عدد اطفال كروزو؟
لديه ثلاثة اطفال .

He had three children.

(16) When did Crusoe's wife die?

متى توفيت زوجة كروزو؟

After 8 years of their marriage.

بعد ثمانى سنوات من زواجهم .

(17) When did Crusoe decide to visit his island again?

متى قرر كروزو ان يزور الجزيره مرة ثانيه؟

After his wife's death.

بعد وفاة زوجته .

(18) How long did Crusoe stay on the island after his wife's death?

ما المده التي اقامها كروزو على الجزيره بعد وفاة زوجته ؟

He stayed there for 3 weeks.

هو مكث هناك لمدة 3 اسابيع .

(19) What did Crusoe do when he returned to the island ?

ماذا فعل كروزو عندما عاد الى الجزيره .

He helped the people who were living there .

هو ساعد الناس الذين يعيشون هناك .

(20) Why did Crusoe decide to leave England?

لماذا قرر كروزو ان يغادر انجلترا ؟

Because he found it was difficult for him to be happy there.

لأنه وجد انه من الصعب ان يكون سعيدا هناك .

(21) What did Crusoe decide to do after a few years in England?

ماذا قرر كروزو ان يفعل بعد سنوات قليله فى انجلترا ؟

He decided to go to the sea again and work as a trader.

هو قرر ان يذهب الى البحر مرة ثانيه ويعمل كتاجر .

(22) How did Crusoe help the other sailors?

كيف ساعد كروزو البحارة الآخرين؟

He used his experience to help them when they travelled through

استخدم خبرته لمساعدتهم عندما يسافرون الى البحار الخطيرة .

(23) What countries did Crusoe visit in the story?

ما الدول التي زارها كروزو في القصة ؟

England , Guinea , Morocco and Brazil .

انجلترا وغينيا والمغرب والبرازيل .

(24) What were the nationalities of the people that Crusoe lived with ?

ما هي جنسيات الناس التي كان يعيش معهم كروزو على الجزيرة ؟

British , Guinean , Moroccan and Brazilian .

بريطاني وغيني ومغربي وبرازيلي .

أسئلة التفكير النقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

(1) Was Crusoe right when he didn't hurt the mutineers ? Why ? Why not ?

هل كان كروزو على حق عندما لم يصب المتمردين بأذى ؟ لما / ولما لا ؟

Yes , He was right, because he didn't want them to hurt the others.

نعم . هو كان على حق لأنه لم يريد لهم يصيبوا الآخرين بأي أذى .

No, He wasn't right because he should have punished them first .

لا . هو لم يكن على حق لأنه كان يجب أن يعاقبهم أولا .

(2) Crusoe was helpful man , Give examples ?

كروزو كان رجل متعاون . أعطى أمثله ؟

a) He rescued many prisoners

b) He let the rescued persons to live with him safely.

c) He helped other sailors to travel through dangerous seas.

d) He helped people who were living on the island .

1 - أنقذ كثيرا من السجناء . 2 - جعل الذين أنقذهم يعيشوا معه في أمان

3 - ساعد بحاره آخرين أن يسافروا إلى بحار خطيرة 4 - ساعد الناس الذين كانوا يعيشون على الجزيرة .

(3) Why do you think Crusoe stayed only for a few years in England

لماذا تعتقد أن كروزو مكث لبضع سنين فقط في إنجلترا ؟

Because he had an adventurous character .

He liked sailing in the sea and to be a trader .

لأنه كان لديه شخصيه مغامرة .

كان يحب الإبحار في البحر وأن يكون تاجرا .

(4) Why was Crusoe unhappy in England .

لماذا لم يكن كروزو سعيدا في إنجلترا ؟

a) Because his wife died .

b) because he liked to be a sailor and a trader .

(1) لأن زوجته توفيت . (2) لأنه كان يحب أن يكون بحارا وتاجرا .

(5) How do you think Crusoe felt when he saw the English ship?

بماذا شعر كروزو عندما رأى السفينة الانجليزية ؟

I think , He felt happy.

أعتقد أنه شعر بالسعادة .



(6) *Do you think Friday enjoyed living in England? Why / Why not ?*

هل تعتقد أن فريداى استمتع بالعيش في إنجلترا ؟ لما ؟ ولما لا ؟

Yes ,I think so , because he was with his friend Crusoe .

(7) *Why do Crusoe feel sad when he left the island at the end ?*

لماذا شعر كروزو بالحزن عندما ترك الجزيرة في النهاية ؟

Because he was an adventurous man and he felt happy with his new friend there s

لأنه رجل مغامر وشعر بالسعادة مع أصدقائه الجدد هناك .

EXERCISES ON CHAPTER TWO

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *In England Crusoe had a wife and three children.*
- (2) *Crusoe left the island and sailed back to London.*
- (3) *After his wife died, Crusoe decided to visit his island again.*
- (4) *Crusoe sailed back to England with Friday and the ship's captain.*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *The three prisoners were brought to the island by some mutineers.*
- (2) *When Crusoe saw the English ship, he was surprised .*
- (3) *Crusoe learned that the three prisoners were also sailors.*
- (4) *The three prisoners were brought to the island from a ship .*

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *Crusoe was kind when he didn't want to hurt the mutineers .*
- (2) *The English captain wanted to thank Crusoe .*
- (3) *Crusoe was really happy when the captain gave him his ship.*
- (4) *Crusoe and Friday captured the mutineers .*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *One of the prisoners was the ship's captain.*
- (2) *Crusoe and Friday rescued the English captain and captured the mutineers.*
- (3) *The other two prisoners were the captain's friends .*
- (4) *The sailors who brought the prisoners to the island were mutineers.*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *Crusoe left England and went to sea again .*
- (2) *Crusoe married and had three children.*
- (3) *The English captain gave Crusoe his ship.*
- (4) *A small boat sailed to the island and brought three prisoners .*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *Crusoe's wife died and he returned to the island again .*
- (2) *Crusoe left the island and went to England with Friday and the ship's captain ..*
- (3) *Some mutineers took the ship from the captain.*
- (4) *Crusoe married and had a family.*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *Crusoe didn't want to hurt the mutineers, So he let them stay on the island .*
- (2) *The mutineers took the ship from the English captain and his friends.*
- (3) *The English captain wanted to thank Crusoe for his help.*
- (4) *Crusoe and Friday rescued the English captain and two sailors.*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *The people who took the prisoners to the island were mutineers.*
- (2) *One of the three prisoners was the ship's captain.*
- (3) *A small boat sailed to the island and brought three prisoners .*
- (4) *The four men became good friends and lived happily on the island.*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *The English captain thanked Crusoe.*
- (2) *The English captain gave Crusoe his ship .*
- (3) *Crusoe and Friday rescued the English captain and two sailors.*
- (4) *Crusoe and Friday captured the mutineers and took back English ship.*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *After his wife died, Crusoe decided to visit the island again.*
- (2) *Crusoe left England and went to sea again.*
- (3) *Crusoe married and had three children.*
- (4) *Crusoe wanted to use his experience to help others .*

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) *The English captain gave Crusoe his ship .*
- (2) *A small boat sailed to the island and brought three prisoners.*
- (3) *Crusoe left the island and sailed back to England.*
- (4) *Crusoe and Friday rescued the English captain and two sailors.*



(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) After his wife died, Crusoe decided to visit the island again.
- (2) In England Crusoe married and had three children.
- (3) Crusoe left the island and sailed back to England.
- (4) Crusoe didn't want to hurt the mutineers.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

A - Put the events into the correct order

- (1) Crusoe decided to go to the sea again and work as a trader.
- (2) Crusoe wanted to use his experience to help other sailors.
- (3) Crusoe and Friday rescued the English captain.
- (4) Crusoe let the mutineers stay on the island.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
-----	-----	-----	-----

أسئلة عامه على الفصل الرابع

1) What did Crusoe decide to do after his wife's death?

2) When did Crusoe left the island to England ?

3) Which life did Crusoe love more ? Why ?

4) Why do you think Crusoe wasn't happy in England?

5) What were the important things that happened to Crusoe in England after returning?

6) What did Crusoe want to do when he decided to go to the island ?

7) Do you think Crusoe was happier on the island ?



8) *Crusoe was brave and kind, Give two examples?*

9) *What did The English captain do to thank Crusoe for his help ?*

10) *What did Crusoe do to the mutineers ?*

11) *How did Crusoe help the English captain and his two friends ?*

12) *Who were the people who took the captain and his friends to the Island ?*

13) *Who saved the English captain and his friends?*

14) *Why do you think Crusoe let the mutineers live on the island ?*

15) *When did v decide to visit the island again?*

16) *How long did Crusoe stay on the island when he visited it again ?*

17) *How did the four men become on the island ?*

18) *Why was Crusoe surprised one day ?*

19) *Who brought the three prisoners to the island ?*

20) *Who took the captain's ship ?*

21) *Who were taken to the island with the captain ?*

22) *What were the mutineers doing when they reached the island ?*

23) *Who captured the mutineers ?*



24) How did Crusoe and Friday take back the English ship?

25) What did the English captain want to do ?

26) How did the captain reward Crusoe ?

27) What did Crusoe do with the mutineers ?

28) Where did Crusoe sail back to ?

29) What did he do after returning to England ?

30) How many children did Crusoe have ?

31) What happened to Crusoe's wife ?

28) What did Crusoe use his experience to do ?

ملاحظات

مع أطيب تمنياتي بالتوفيق والنجاح

Mr. Nabil Fawzy

0122 72 44601

www.khawagah.blogspot.com



مدونة **خواجه**
ترحب بكم
وتتمنى لكم أحلى الأوقات
كل عام وأنتم بخير